



# Forest Management Planning Manual

May 2020

# **Forest Management Planning Manual**

Prepared under the Authority of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994

May 2020

Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry

- 1    © 2020 Queen's Printer for Ontario  
2    Printed in Ontario, Canada
- 3    Publications and price lists are available from this office:  
4    Service Ontario Publications  
5    300 Water Street  
6    Peterborough, ON, K9J 8M5  
7    1-800-668-9938  
8    [www.serviceontario.ca/publications](http://www.serviceontario.ca/publications)
- 9    Telephone inquiries should be directed to the Service Ontario Contact Centre:
- 10   General Inquiry 1-800-668-9938  
11   Renseignements en Français 1-800-667-1840  
12   Fax (705) 755-1677
- 13   Cette publication hautement spécialisée {Forest Management Planning Manual} n'est  
14   disponible qu'en anglais conformément au Règlement 671/92, selon lequel il n'est  
15   pas obligatoire de la traduire en vertu de la Loi sur les services en français. Pour  
16   obtenir des renseignements en français, veuillez communiquer avec le ministère des  
17   Richesses naturelles et des Forêts au 1-800-667-1840.
- 18   Visit Ontario's Forests website at:  
19   <https://www.ontario.ca/page/forestry>
- 20   Visit the Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry website at:  
21   <https://www.ontario.ca/page/ministry-natural-resources-and-forestry>
- 22   How to cite this manual:
- 23   OMNRF. May 2020. Forest Management Planning Manual, Toronto. Queen's Printer  
24   for Ontario. 318 pp
- 25   ISBN: 978-1-4868-4494-4 (Print)  
26   ISBN: 978-1-4868-4493-7 (PDF)  
27



## Foreward

### The Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests

The overall context for forest management in Ontario is the Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests. The framework sets broad direction for forest policy and makes forest sustainability the primary objective of forest management. It helps to address climate change by ensuring Ontario's forests contribute positively to the global environment. This contribution is made through the application of the principles for sustaining forests.

### Overview of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*

The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, 1994 (CFSA) came into effect on April 1, 1995. The Act is enabling legislation, and provides for the regulation of forest planning, information, operations, licensing, trust funds, processing facilities, remedies and enforcement, and transitional provisions. The CFSA is designed to allow for the management of all forest-based values, while providing for the sustainability of Crown forests. The CFSA defines sustainability as long-term Crown forest health, and reflects the broad direction set out in the Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests.

### A Manual Approach to Implementation of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*

The CFSA requires the provision of four manuals to guide various aspects of forest management in Ontario. These manuals are prepared in accordance with Section 68 of the Act and are regulated in accordance with Section 69(1) 29:

1. The Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM);
2. The Forest Information Manual (FIM);
3. The Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (FOSM); and
4. The Scaling Manual (SM).

The FMPM is the pivotal document that provides direction for all aspects of forest management planning for Crown lands in Ontario within management units designated under the CFSA, with the exception of the southern Ontario management unit.

In accordance with the CFSA, forest sustainability will be determined in accordance with the approach described in the FMPM. The approach requires the identification of measurable indicators in order to assess the effectiveness of activities in achieving management objectives and to assess the sustainability of the forest for the management unit. For the forest management plan (FMP), the determination of sustainability will be a conclusion that the FMP provides for the long-term Crown forest health on the management unit, and has

1 regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including  
2 recreational values and heritage values. Management unit annual reports require the  
3 monitoring and evaluation of future forest conditions to compare with planned outcomes,  
4 which provide a means for continual refinement, redevelopment and improvement of forest  
5 management activities.

6  
7 The FIM describes the information requirements to support forest management. The FIM  
8 directs the sharing and exchange of forest-related information between the MNRF and  
9 Ontario's forest industry.

10  
11 The FOSM sets out the over-arching principles and accepted approaches for forest  
12 management, the standards for forest operations and silvicultural practices, the minimum  
13 qualifications for forestry workers, and the procedures for the evaluation of forest  
14 management in Ontario.

15  
16 The SM contains instructions and standards for the measurement of Crown forest resources,  
17 provides instructions for the authorized movement of Crown forest resources and sets out  
18 the requirements for conducting scaling audits.

## 21 **Manual Revision**

22  
23 The four manuals are revised, improved, and updated based on experiences in using the  
24 manuals, and as new information becomes available. Revisions to the manuals will be made  
25 in accordance with the CFSA regulation.

## 28 **Forest Management**

29  
30 Forest Management is conducted in an adaptive management cycle. A FMP is prepared by a  
31 plan author, who is assisted by an interdisciplinary planning team. The plan author must be a  
32 registered professional forester, who certifies that the FMP has been prepared in  
33 accordance with the FMPM. The FMP is implemented as scheduled in the annual work  
34 schedule and as reported in the annual report. Following year five, the implementation of  
35 the FMP to date is assessed and a determination is made as to whether the implementation  
36 of the FMP has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest and recommendations for  
37 future planning are provided. The next FMP is prepared in consideration of  
38 recommendations from the year five annual report; changes to the forest condition; updates  
39 to science and policy; and specific efforts to confirm, update, or revise management  
40 objectives and practices.

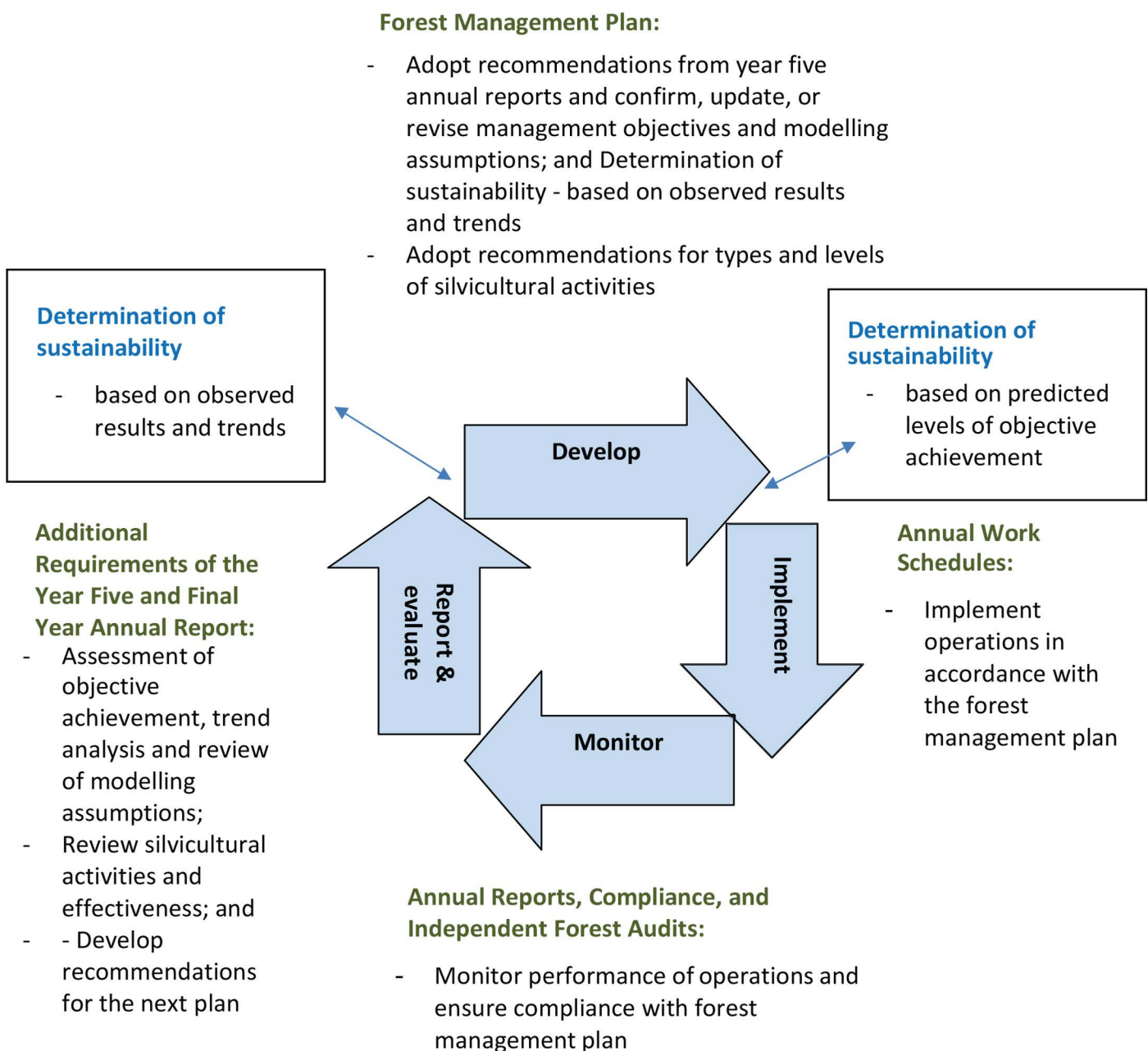
41  
42 The MNRF and forest licensees who prepare and implement forest management plans are  
43 highly trained and hold credentials (i.e., certification and professional licenses). To enable a

more competitive and efficient forest management planning process MNRF and the forest industry must be risk-tolerant, results oriented, and recognize professional accountability.

MNRF will ensure that professional and technical training programs related to the preparation and implementation of forest management plans are maintained and delivered so that the knowledge of persons involved in the application of this manual is current.

Figure 1 provides an overview of the adaptive management cycle as it pertains to the provision of forest sustainability in FMPs.

**Figure 1: Adaptive Management Cycle**



## Climate Change Considerations

Ontario recognizes climate change as a challenge requiring government action. *Preserving and Protecting our Environment for Future Generations: A Made-in-Ontario Environment Plan* commits the province to contributing to global greenhouse gas emission reductions by preparing for a changing climate and continuing research to help understand climate change and its effect on the environment.

Ontario's efforts to address climate change are focused on adaptation and mitigation. Adaptation involves practices and behaviours to reduce vulnerabilities and risks associated with climate change. Mitigation refers to efforts to reduce or prevent emissions of greenhouse gases into the atmosphere or increase sequestration.

Healthy, resilient forests are best able to resist and adapt to climate change impacts. Ontario's sustainable forest management framework has been designed to ensure a healthy, and therefore, resilient forest. At the foundation of that framework is the CFSA that directs the conservation of large, healthy, diverse and productive Crown forests and their associated ecological processes and biological diversity. Building from this foundation, the forest management guides - which are required to be used by each planning team when they develop a FMP - describe in more detail the objectives (e.g., diverse range of forest types and ages) and practices (e.g., conserve soil and water resources) that are consistent with a healthy, resilient forest. This FMPM then describes the process and standards used to incorporate Ontario's sustainable forest management framework into local decision making. All of this direction provides the flexibility to adapt local forest management actions to both resist and respond to potential climate change impacts. Regular monitoring, including that specified in this FMPM, provides the necessary feedback to evaluate the effectiveness of local decisions and Ontario's overall sustainable forest management framework in achieving healthy and resilient forests.

In addition to the monitoring specified in the FMPM, the MNRF undertakes a program of effectiveness monitoring for the forest management guides to ensure that the direction in the guides is effective. The MNRF also considers the latest science during the reviews of forest management guides, including climate change research. Ontario's State of Natural Resources reporting supports the government's efforts towards climate change mitigation through the sharing of information and reporting on forest carbon balances.

In addition, the way Ontario's Crown forests are managed can influence the amount of carbon that is released into the atmosphere and stored in trees and harvested wood products – i.e. mitigation. Sustainable forest management, supported by the framework described in this FMPM, can help mitigate climate change.

The MNRF continues to improve the understanding of climate change and its effect on Ontario's Crown forests working with other agencies and partners on research studies and

- 1 sharing information. The sustainable forest management framework will be adapted to
- 2 reflect this improved understanding over time to ensure the long-term health of Ontario's
- 3 Crown forests.



**Table of Contents**

FOREWORD .....	iii
INTRODUCTION .....	xi
Phase-in Provisions for the Application of this Forest Management Planning Manual .....	xiv
FRENCH SUMMARY .....	xv
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS	
Table of Contents .....	A-1
Phase-in Provisions.....	A-6
1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN.....	A-8
2.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION.....	A-79
3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING.....	A-106
PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS	
Table of Contents .....	B-1
Phase-In Provisions.....	B-3
1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	B-6
2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION .....	B-7
3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION .....	B-12
4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS .....	B-18
5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY .....	B-33
6.0 DOCUMENTATION .....	B-34
7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY .....	B-36
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, AND FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS	
Table of Contents .....	C-1
1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	C-4
Phase-In Provisions.....	C-4
2.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN AMENDMENTS .....	C-5
3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS.....	C-13
4.0 EARLY PLAN RENEWALS .....	C-19
5.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS .....	C-20
6.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION.....	C-25
7.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION .....	C-35

1	PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS	
2	Table of Contents .....	D-1
3	1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	D-3
4	Phase-in Provisions .....	D-3
5	2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS.....	D-4
6	3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE .....	D-7
7	4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS .....	D-19
8	5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS.....	D-20
9	6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS .....	D-22
10	7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION .....	D-24
11	8.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION .....	D-30
12		
13	PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS	
14	Table of Contents .....	E-1
15	1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	E-2
16	Phase-in Provisions .....	E-2
17	2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS .....	E-3
18	3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL REPORTSE-7	
19	4.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW .....	E-13
20		
21	PART F – MANAGEMENT UNIT SPECIFIC DIRECTION	
22	Table of Contents .....	F-1
23	Phase-in Provisions .....	F-4
24		
25	WHITEFEATHER FOREST .....	F-5
26	PART A - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS.....	F-5
27	1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN .....	F-5
28	3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN	
29	FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING .....	F-9
30	PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS .....	F-10
31	3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION .....	F-10
32	4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS.....	F-10
33	6.0 DOCUMENTATION .....	F-11
34	PART E - MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS .....	F-12
35	1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	F-12
36	3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL	
37	REPORTS .....	F-12
38	5.0 REPORTS TO PIKANGIKUM FIRST NATION .....	F-13
39		
40	CAT-SLATE FOREST .....	F-16
41	PART A - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS .....	F-16
42	1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN .....	F-16
43	3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN	
44	FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING .....	F-20

1	PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS .....	F-21
2	4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS .....	F-21
3	6.0 DOCUMENTATION.....	F-22
4	PART E - MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS .....	F-22
5	1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	F-22
6	5.0 REPORTS TO CAT LAKE FIRST NATION AND SLATE FALLS NATION .....	F-22
7		
8	APPENDICES	
9	Table of Contents .....	App-1
10	Appendix I: Social and Economic Description .....	App-2
11	Appendix II: Primary Roads Supplementary Documentation Form .....	App-5
12	Appendix III: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form.....	App-8
13	Appendix IV: Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits .....	App-12
14	Appendix V: Operational Standards for Wood Storage Yards.....	App-14
15		
16	GLOSSARY OF TERMS .....	Glossary-1
17		

## INTRODUCTION

The FMPM prescribes the requirements for Ontario's forest management planning system including a detailed description of the planning process and the products. The forest management planning cycle, established by the manual, consists of planning, implementation, monitoring and reporting. The reporting component of this planning system includes evaluation of results and recommendations to be incorporated into a subsequent planning process to complete the cycle.

The FMPM provides direction based on the legislative requirements of the CFSA and applies to designated management units, with the exception of the southern Ontario management unit.

The FMPM focuses on the delivery of the forest management component of higher-order provincial and regional land use and resource management policies and strategies and their successors including:

- MNRF Strategic Plan 2020-2025: Naturally Resourceful;
- MNRF Statement of Environmental Values;
- Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests;
- Old Growth Policy for Ontario's Crown Forests; and
- Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas.

These policies and strategies, along with other local strategies, provide the overall context for the preparation of FMPs, including the determination of forest sustainability.

First Nation and Métis communities have unique rights and interests from other people in Ontario. These may include Aboriginal and treaty rights, recognized and affirmed in section 35 of the *Constitution Act, 1982* and interests as peoples with distinct cultures, histories, languages, perspectives, needs, and aspirations.

The FMPM describes the approach for working with First Nation and Métis communities to support their involvement in the forest management planning process in a manner that respects Aboriginal and treaty rights, and that assists the Crown in addressing its duty to consult obligations, where triggered.

The FMPM is intended to be implemented in a manner that provides protection for species at risk and their habitats. FMPs are developed in accordance with the FMPM and approved forest management guides, which provide direction for species at risk. These forest management guides use a nested coarse and fine filter approach to conserve biodiversity (including species at risk).

1 Coarse filter direction is designed to create a mosaic of ecosystem conditions that  
2 approximate those likely to be created by natural disturbance processes such as wildfire,  
3 insects, and wind to sustain large well-distributed populations of most plants and animals.

4 The fine filter is a species-specific approach that acknowledges that the requirements of  
5 some species may not be addressed by the coarse filter alone. Fine filter direction may be  
6 deemed necessary when species require the habitat components created by the coarse filter  
7 direction in very specific patterns (e.g., caribou, moose, deer) or when nonhabitat-related  
8 effects of forest operations must be mitigated (e.g., disturbance of nesting birds by the noise  
9 of operations).

10 When direction for a species at risk is not contained within a current forest management  
11 guide (e.g., species received protection or additional protection under the *Endangered*  
12 *Species Act* 2007 after the guide was approved), the FMPM requires that direction be  
13 developed by the planning team with the assistance of MNRF staff with expertise in species  
14 at risk. This direction gets included in the FMP that applies to the management unit where  
15 the species is present.

16 MNRF maintains a research program that focuses on evaluating the effectiveness of  
17 direction in forest management guides (referred to as Effectiveness Monitoring). Results of  
18 this research are considered during the review and revision of forest management guides,  
19 completing the adaptive management cycle.

20 The geographic basis for a FMP is a management unit. FMPs will be prepared for each  
21 designated management unit, with the exception of the southern Ontario management unit,  
22 in accordance with the requirements of the FMPM. FMPs set out the forest management  
23 activities, including road access, timber harvest, and forest renewal, and maintenance that  
24 may occur on a management unit.

25  
26 On designated management units which are not managed under a sustainable forest license,  
27 the Crown or another designated party is responsible for the preparation and  
28 implementation of a FMP. For the purpose of this manual, the sustainable forest licensee is  
29 referenced as the party responsible for preparing and implementing FMPs. Where the  
30 requirements of this manual refer to the sustainable forest licensee, those requirements will  
31 apply to the MNRF or the party responsible for the preparation and implementation of a  
32 FMP.

33  
34 For the requirements of this manual, all approvals reference the MNRF regional director,  
35 MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF district manager and/or MNRF district supervisor.

36  
37 FMPs are prepared for a ten-year period. The planning process normally takes 36 months  
38 and results in a FMP that contains the long-term management direction, locations of primary  
39 and branch road corridors, and details of operations.



The FMPM is divided into six major parts:

**PART A** provides direction for the preparation of FMPs, and describes requirements for:

- preparing the forest management plan and planning of operations for the ten-year period;
- public consultation; and
- First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.

**PART B** provides the FMP content requirements, and describes requirements for:

- section headings and associated documentation;
- supplementary documentation; and
- FMP summary.

**PART C** provides the planning requirements for plan amendments, contingency plans, plan extensions, and unscheduled and early plan renewals, and describes the requirements for:

- administrative, minor, major, and long-term management direction (LTMD) amendments;
- contingency plans and plan extensions;
- early plan renewals;
- public consultation; and
- First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.

**PART D** provides direction for the scheduling of forest management operations on an annual basis, and describes requirements for:

- forest operations prescriptions;
- annual work schedules;
- prescribed burns;
- aerial herbicide and insecticide projects;
- insect pest management programs;
- public consultation; and
- First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.

**PART E** provides direction for management unit annual reports and evaluation of forest management operations, as well as the condition of the forest, at regular intervals, and describes:

- requirements for all management unit annual reports;
- additional requirements for the year five and final year annual reports; and
- submission and review requirements.

**PART F** provides management unit specific direction for individual management units (e.g., the Whitefeather Forest), and describes additional requirements for:

- First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning;
- development of the LTMD;
- planning of operations for the ten-year period;
- plan documentation; and
- management unit annual reports.

In addition to the Parts, the manual contains the following appendices:

- I. Social and Economic Description
- II. Primary Roads Supplementary Documentation Form
- III. Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form
- IV. Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits
- V. Operational Standards for Wood Storage Yards

The FMPM also contains a glossary of terms.

The FMPM is intended to be used by those involved in forest management planning including registered professional foresters, other related professionals, stakeholders and the public.

Each year, MNRF will make available on the Ontario Government website a schedule that identifies FMPs currently in preparation or approved for implementation.

MNRF will maintain information on the Ontario Government website on how to become involved in forest management planning.

### **Phase-in Provisions for the Application of this Forest Management Planning Manual**

The cyclical nature of forest management planning dictates that it will be a number of years before all requirements of this FMPM can be fully implemented for all management units across the province. The requirements of this FMPM will apply upon the effective date of this manual, unless otherwise directed by the phase-in provisions included at the beginning of each Part of this manual.

## **French Summary**

Le *Manuel de planification de la gestion forestière* (MPGF) énonce les exigences du système de planification de la gestion forestière de l'Ontario, y compris une description détaillée du processus de planification et des produits. Le cycle de planification de la gestion forestière, établi dans le manuel, consiste à planifier, à mettre en œuvre, à surveiller et à produire des rapports. Le volet de production de rapports de ce système de planification comprend l'évaluation des résultats et des recommandations à intégrer à un prochain processus de planification afin de compléter le cycle.

Le MPGF fournit des directives fondées sur les exigences législatives de la *Loi de 1994 sur la durabilité des forêts de la Couronne* et s'applique aux unités de gestion désignées, à l'exception de l'unité de gestion du Sud de l'Ontario.

Le MPGF met l'accent sur l'exécution du volet concernant la gestion forestière inclus dans les politiques et les stratégies provinciales et régionales de gestion des ressources et d'utilisation du sol d'ordre élevé et leurs versions subséquentes. Ces politiques et stratégies, ainsi que d'autres stratégies locales, fournissent un contexte général pour la préparation des plans de gestion forestière, y compris la détermination de la durabilité de la forêt.

Les collectivités des Premières Nations et des Métis ont des droits et des intérêts uniques par rapport aux autres habitants de l'Ontario. Ces droits et intérêts peuvent comprendre les droits des Autochtones et les droits issus de traités, tel que reconnus et confirmés dans l'article 35 de la *Loi constitutionnelle de 1982* et les intérêts en tant que peuples avec des cultures, des histoires, des langues et des aspirations distinctes.

Le MPGF décrit la démarche utilisée pour travailler avec les collectivités des Premières Nations et des Métis afin de favoriser leur participation au processus de planification de la gestion forestière d'une façon qui respecte les droits des Autochtones et les droits issus de traités et qui aide la Couronne à s'acquitter de ses obligations de consulter lorsqu'elles sont déclenchées.

Le MPGF doit être mis en œuvre d'une manière qui assure la protection des espèces en péril et de leurs habitats. Les plans de gestion forestière sont élaborés conformément au MPGF et aux guides de gestion forestière approuvés, qui fournissent des directives en ce qui a trait aux espèces en péril.

La base géographique d'un plan de gestion forestière est une unité de gestion. Les plans de gestion forestière seront préparés pour chaque unité de gestion désignée, à l'exception de l'unité de gestion du Sud de l'Ontario, conformément aux exigences du MPGF. Les plans de gestion forestière déterminent les activités de gestion forestière, y compris l'accès routier, la récolte de bois d'œuvre et le renouvellement et le maintien de la forêt qui peuvent avoir lieu dans une unité de gestion.

Le MPGF est divisé en six parties principales :

La **PARTIE A** fournit des directives à l'égard de la préparation des plans de gestion forestière et décrit les exigences concernant :

- la préparation du plan de gestion forestière et de la planification des opérations pour la période de dix ans;
- la consultation publique;
- la participation et la consultation des collectivités des Premières Nations et des Métis.

La **PARTIE B** prévoit des exigences quant au contenu du plan de gestion forestière et décrit les exigences concernant :

- les titres de section et la documentation connexe;
- la documentation supplémentaire;
- le résumé du plan de gestion forestière.

La **PARTIE C** donne les exigences relatives à la planification des modifications du plan, des plans provisoires, des prolongations du plan, des renouvellements imprévus et anticipés, et décrit les exigences concernant :

- les modifications administratives, mineures et majeures et les modifications de l'orientation de gestion à long terme (OGLT);
- les plans provisoires et les prolongations des plans;
- les renouvellements anticipés du plan;
- la consultation publique;
- la participation et la consultation des collectivités des Premières Nations et des Métis.

La **PARTIE D** fournit des directives pour établir un calendrier des activités de gestion forestière sur une base annuelle et décrit les exigences concernant :

- les prescriptions en matière d'opérations forestières;
- les calendriers de travail annuels;
- les brûlages dirigés;
- les projets d'épandage d'herbicides et d'insecticide aériens;
- les programmes de gestion des insectes nuisibles;
- la consultation publique;
- la participation et la consultation des collectivités des Premières Nations et des Métis.

La **PARTIE E** fournit des directives concernant les rapports annuels des unités de gestion et l'évaluation des activités de gestion forestière, ainsi que l'état de la forêt, à intervalles réguliers, et décrit ce qui suit :

- les exigences à l'égard de tous les rapports annuels des unités de gestion;
- les exigences supplémentaires concernant les rapports annuels de la cinquième et de la dernière années;
- les exigences en matière de soumission et d'examen.

La **PARTIE F** fournit des directives propres aux unités de gestion individuelles (p. ex., la forêt Whitefeather), et décrit les exigences additionnelles concernant :

- la participation et la consultation des collectivités des Premières Nations et des Métis à l'égard de la planification de la gestion forestière;
- l'élaboration de l'OGLT;
- la planification des opérations pour la période de dix ans;
- la documentation du plan;
- les rapports annuels de l'unité de gestion.

En plus des parties, le manuel contient les annexes suivantes :

- VI. Une description des contextes social et économique
- VII. Un formulaire de documentation supplémentaire concernant les routes principales
- VIII. Un formulaire de documentation supplémentaire sur les secteurs préoccupants
- IX. Des normes opérationnelles concernant des carrières d'agrégats de foresterie
- X. Des normes opérationnelles en ce qui a trait aux cours d'entreposage du bois

Le MPGF comprend également un glossaire de termes.

Le MPGF est rédigé pour les personnes qui participent à la planification de la gestion forestière, notamment les forestiers professionnels agréés, d'autres professionnels connexes, les parties intéressées et le public.



## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS</b>	<b>6</b>
Phase-in Provisions	6
<b>1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN</b>	<b>8</b>
1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning	10
1.1.1 Introduction	10
1.1.1.1 Description of Management Responsibilities	10
1.1.2 Planning Team	10
1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference	12
1.1.2.2 Project Plan	13
1.1.3 Local Citizens’ Committee	14
1.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements	14
1.1.5 Decision Support Systems	15
1.1.6 Progress Checkpoints	16
1.1.7 Analysis Package	17
1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information	17
1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction	18
1.1.8.2 Provincial Audits and Reports	18
1.1.8.3 Forest Operations and Silviculture	19
1.1.8.4 Management Unit Annual Reports	19
1.1.8.5 Planning Composite Inventory	19
1.1.8.6 Fish and Wildlife Inventory Information	20
1.1.8.7 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk	20
1.1.8.8 Other Resource Inventories and Information	21
1.1.8.9 Values Information	21
1.1.8.10 Roads and Water Crossings Inventory	22
1.1.8.11 Social and Economic Description	22
1.1.8.12 Historic Forest Condition	23
1.1.8.13 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report	24
1.1.9 Development of a Consultation Approach with Each First Nation and Métis Community	24
1.1.10 Stage One – Invitation to Participate	24
1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction	24
1.2.1 Introduction	24
1.2.2 Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition	25
1.2.2.1 Forest Units	25
1.2.2.2 Management Decision Information	26
1.2.2.3 Forest Landscape Classes	28
1.2.2.4 Other Forest Classifications	28
1.2.3 Management Considerations	28
1.2.3.1 Modified Fire Response	29
1.2.4 Base Model	29
1.2.4.1 Forest Dynamics – Growth and Yield	30

1	1.2.4.2 Forest Dynamics–Natural Forest Succession .....	30
2	1.2.4.3 Forest Dynamics – Forest Disturbance .....	31
3	1.2.4.4 Silvicultural Ground Rules .....	31
4	1.2.4.5 Silvicultural Options .....	32
5	1.2.5 Forest Sustainability.....	33
6	1.2.5.1 Developing Management Objectives.....	34
7	Management Zones .....	38
8	Desired Forest and Benefits Meeting .....	39
9	Setting Desired Levels .....	40
10	Harvest Eligibility Criteria.....	40
11	1.2.5.2 Development of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction.....	41
12	Objective Assessment .....	42
13	Available Harvest Area.....	43
14	Preferred and Optional Harvest Areas.....	43
15	Spatial Assessment .....	44
16	Social and Economic Assessment .....	44
17	Risk Assessment .....	45
18	1.2.5.3 Preliminary Determination of Sustainability .....	45
19	1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors.....	46
20	1.2.7 Summary of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....	47
21	1.2.8 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction.....	48
22	1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations .....	49
23	1.3.1 Introduction .....	49
24	1.3.2 Preliminary Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction .....	49
25	1.3.3 Selection of Areas of Operations .....	50
26	1.3.3.1 Harvest Areas .....	50
27	1.3.3.2 Contingency Area.....	51
28	1.3.3.3 Renewal and Tending Areas.....	51
29	1.3.3.4 Silvicultural Trial Areas.....	52
30	1.3.4 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan.....	52
31	1.3.4.1 Bridging Operations .....	52
32	1.3.4.2 Second-Pass Harvest Operations .....	53
33	1.3.5 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Operations, and Conditions on	
34	Roads, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits.....	53
35	1.3.5.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern .....	53
36	Operational Prescriptions and Conditions from a Forest Management Guide.....	54
37	Operational Prescriptions and Conditions from Other Planning Exercises .....	55
38	Operational Prescriptions and Conditions Developed by the Planning Team .....	55
39	1.3.5.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas .....	56
40	Silvicultural Ground Rules.....	57
41	Residual Forest for Planned Clearcuts .....	57
42	1.3.5.3 Important Ecological Features.....	58
43	Conditions on Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits .....	58
44	Conditions on Regular Operations.....	58

1	1.3.6 Roads.....	59
2	1.3.6.1 Primary Road Corridors.....	59
3	1.3.6.2 Branch Road Corridors.....	60
4	1.3.6.3 Area of Concern Crossings – Primary and Branch Roads.....	61
5	1.3.6.4 Operational Roads .....	62
6	1.3.6.5 Existing Roads .....	64
7	Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings.....	64
8	1.3.6.6 Forestry Aggregate Pits.....	65
9	Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits.....	65
10	Aggregate Extraction Areas .....	66
11	Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits .....	66
12	1.3.6.7 Use Management Strategies.....	66
13	1.3.6.8 Wood Storage Yards .....	67
14	1.3.7 Confirmation of Draft Proposed Operations .....	68
15	1.3.8 Expenditures .....	69
16	1.3.9 Spatial Assessment.....	69
17	1.3.10 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction	
18	69	
19	1.3.11 Determination of Sustainability .....	70
20	1.3.12 Proposed Operations Summary.....	71
21	1.3.13 Stage Three – Review of Proposed Operations .....	71
22	1.4 Preparing for Stage Four – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft Forest	
23	Management Plan.....	71
24	1.4.1 Introduction .....	71
25	1.4.2 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan.....	71
26	1.4.3 Submission of the Draft Forest Management Plan.....	72
27	1.4.4 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary .....	73
28	1.4.5 Availability of the Draft Forest Management Plan .....	73
29	1.4.6 Stage Four – Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan .....	73
30	1.4.7 MNRF Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan .....	73
31	1.4.7.1 MNRF’s List of Required Alterations.....	74
32	1.5 Preparing for Stage Five – Revision and Approval of the Forest Management Plan	
33	.....	76
34	1.5.1 Introduction .....	76
35	1.5.2 Preparation of the Forest Management Plan and Forest Management Plan	
36	Summary .....	76
37	1.5.3 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan.....	76
38	1.5.4 Distribution of the MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan.....	77
39	1.5.5 Stage Five – Inspection of the MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan .....	78
40	1.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan .....	78
41	<b>2.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION .....</b>	<b>79</b>
42	2.1 Introduction .....	79
43	2.2 Local Citizens’ Committee.....	79
44	2.2.1 Introduction .....	79

1	2.2.2 Purpose .....	79
2	2.2.3 Membership and Organization .....	80
3	2.2.4 Terms of Reference .....	82
4	2.2.5 Administration .....	83
5	2.2.6 Reports and Records .....	83
6	2.2.7 Forest Management Plan Documentation .....	84
7	2.3 Public Consultation Requirements .....	85
8	2.3.1 Introduction .....	85
9	2.3.2 General Requirements .....	85
10	2.3.2.1 Public Notices .....	85
11	Additional Information Forums .....	87
12	Supplemental Notices .....	87
13	2.3.2.2 Planning Team and Local Citizens' Committee Communication .....	87
14	2.3.2.3 Responses to Comments .....	88
15	2.3.2.4 French Language Services Act .....	88
16	2.3.3 Formal Public Consultation .....	89
17	2.3.3.1 Stage One – Invitation to Participate .....	89
18	Direct Written Notice Requirements .....	89
19	Information Available .....	90
20	2.3.3.2 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....	91
21	Direct Written Notice Requirements .....	91
22	Information Available .....	92
23	2.3.3.3 Stage Three – Review of Proposed Operations .....	93
24	Direct Written Notice Requirements .....	94
25	Information Available .....	94
26	2.3.3.4 Stage Four – Review of Draft Forest Management Plan .....	96
27	Direct Written Notice Requirements .....	96
28	Information Available .....	97
29	Final List of Required Alterations .....	97
30	2.3.3.5 Stage Five – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan .....	98
31	Direct Written Notice Requirements .....	98
32	Information Available .....	98
33	2.3.3.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan .....	99
34	2.4 Issue Resolution .....	99
35	2.4.1 Issue Resolution Process .....	99
36	2.4.1.1 MNRF District Manager Stage .....	100
37	2.4.1.2 MNRF Regional Director Stage .....	103
38	<b>3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN</b>	
39	<b>FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING .....</b>	<b>106</b>
40	3.1 Introduction .....	106
41	3.1.1 First Nation and Métis communities .....	106
42	3.2 Planning Team .....	107
43	3.3 Local Citizens' Committee .....	108

1	3.4	Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management	
2		Planning .....	108
3	3.5	Proceeding Without an Agreed Upon Customized Consultation Approach .....	110
4	3.5.1	Forest Management Plans .....	110
5	3.5.1.1	Consultation .....	111
6		Stage One – Invitation to Participate.....	111
7		Preparation of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....	111
8		Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction.....	111
9		Stage Three – Review of Proposed Operations .....	112
10		Stage Four – Review of Draft Forest Management Plan .....	112
11		Stage Five – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan .....	113
12	3.6	Documentation .....	113
13	3.6.1	First Nation and Métis Background Information Report .....	113
14	3.6.2	Social and Economic Description .....	114
15	3.6.3	Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values .....	114
16	3.6.4	Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement.....	116

## **LIST OF FIGURES**

21	<b>Figure A-1:</b>	<b>Overview of Schedule for Preparation of a Forest Management Plan .....</b>	<b>9</b>
22	<b>Figure A-2:</b>	<b>Long-Term Management Direction.....</b>	<b>27</b>
23	<b>Figure A-3:</b>	<b>Indicators of Objective Achievement.....</b>	<b>35</b>
24	<b>Figure A-4:</b>	<b>Overview of Issue Resolution Stages .....</b>	<b>101</b>
25			



## **PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS**

Part A of this manual describes the process for the preparation of a forest management plan (FMP). Section 1.0 describes the requirements for preparing the 10-year FMP. Section 2.0 describes public consultation requirements for preparing a 10-year FMP. Section 3.0 describes the opportunities for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning.

### **Phase-in Provisions**

An aggregate pit specified in a forest management plan whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on or after December 10, 2009 may be operated in accordance with the operational requirements referred to in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 and set out in Appendix V of this manual, provided the aggregate pit satisfies the criteria set out in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6. of this manual.

Forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2020 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A of the Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM) (2017).

Forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2021 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A of the FMPM (2017), except as follows:

- Where the effective date of a forest management plan is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2021 silvicultural monitoring aspects, including regeneration standard parameters in the silvicultural ground rules of the FMP may, at the discretion of the plan author, be prepared and conducted in accordance with the previous approved FMP for the management unit.
- Where the effective date of a forest management plan is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2021 and there has been a delay in the preparation of the proposed operations and draft forest management plan beyond the effective date of this manual, the forest management plan will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of the following sections of this FMPM
  - Part A, Section 1.3 through 1.6, to the extent reasonably possible;
  - Part A, Section 2.0 Public Consultation;
  - Part A, Section 3.0 First Nation and Métis Community Involvement and Consultation in Forest Management Planning

- For any request for issue resolution, that is received after the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM), the requirements of Part A, Section 2.4 of this FMPM will apply.

Forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2022, will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A of the FMPM (2017), except as follows:

- Part A, Sections 1.3 through 1.6 of this FMPM shall apply;
- The following sections of this FMPM shall apply to the extent reasonably possible:
  - Part A, Section 2.0 Public Consultation
  - Part A, Section 3.0 First Nation and Métis Community Involvement and Consultation in Forest Management Planning

Subject to the Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (FOSM) and the phase in provisions for the guidance and direction set out in FOSM's associated policies and related technical documents, silvicultural monitoring aspects, including regeneration standard parameters in the silvicultural ground rules, of the FMPs prepared on or after April 1 2022 may, at the discretion of the plan author, be prepared and conducted in accordance with the the previous approved FMP for the management unit.

Subject to the foregoing phase in provisions forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on or after April 1, 2023, will be prepared in accordance with this FMPM.

## **1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

A FMP will be prepared in an open and consultative fashion by the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) or by an organization authorized by MNRF. FMPs will normally be prepared every 10 years, for a 10-year period. A FMP will include the long-term management direction (LTMD) for the management unit and the planned operations for the activities of access, harvest, renewal, and maintenance (i.e., tending and protection). There are five stages of consultation during the preparation of a FMP.

Planning efforts from current FMPs will be considered in the development of the new FMP. A FMP will be prepared utilizing a review of the current plan, confirming, updating or revising the management direction as appropriate, using the best available information (e.g., science, new forest management guides, management unit annual reports).

The preparation, review and approval of the 10-year FMP takes about 36 months. The timetable for the preparation of a FMP, based on an ideal situation, is outlined in Figure A-1. In addition to the 36 months, time is required to assemble background information and update the planning inventory products.

Section 1.1 describes the process to be followed and products that will be available for stage one of consultation.

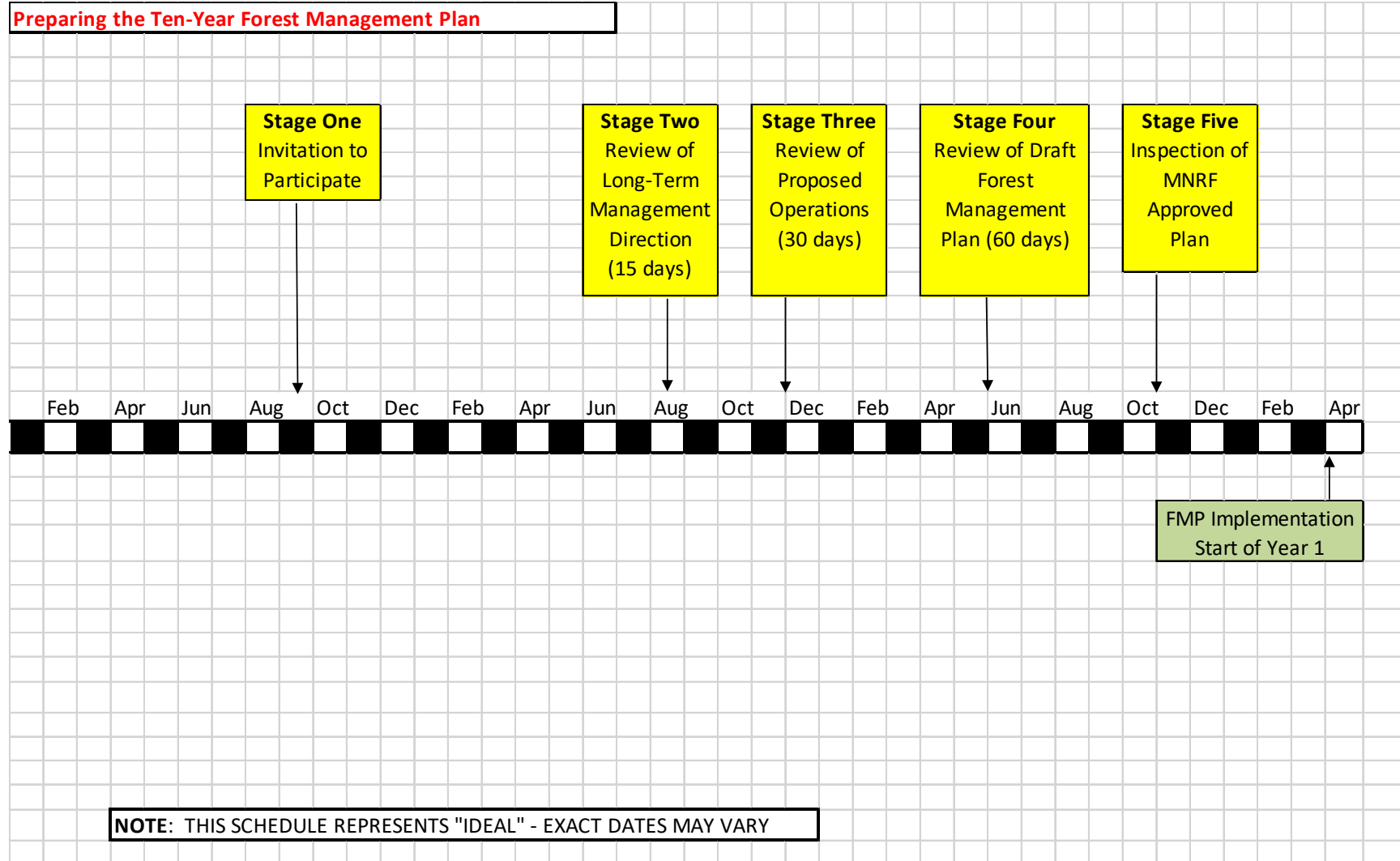
Section 1.2 describes the process to be followed to develop the LTMD, including the identification of preferred and optional areas for harvest. This section also describes the required documentation and products that will be available for stage two of consultation.

Section 1.3 describes the process to be followed for identifying the areas of operations for access, harvest, renewal and tending for the 10-year period. This section also describes the required documentation and products that will be available for stage three of consultation.

Section 1.4 describes the requirements for preparing and submitting the draft FMP, and the requirements for MNRF's review. This section also describes the required documentation and products that will be available for stage four of consultation.

Section 1.5 describes the process for plan revision and approval, and the products that will be available for stage five of consultation.

1 **Figure A-1: Overview of Schedule for Preparation of a Forest Management Plan**



2

## 1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning

### 1.1.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the organization of the planning exercise and the assembly of background information, in preparation for stage one of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.1).

Additional requirements regarding the organization of the planning exercise and the assembly of background information for specific management units (e.g., Whitefeather Forest) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

#### 1.1.1.1 Description of Management Responsibilities

A description of the management responsibilities for the management unit will be prepared. The description will include responsibilities of MNRF, the sustainable forest licensee, and other forest companies, if applicable.

### 1.1.2 Planning Team

A FMP will be prepared by a plan author, who will be assisted by an interdisciplinary planning team and a local citizens' committee (LCC) (Part A, Section 2.2). In addition, advisors with a specialty in a particular subject area will play a role in providing advice and support during plan preparation.

The plan author must be a registered professional forester, licenced under the *Professional Foresters Act, 2000*. For plans prepared by an organization such as a sustainable forest licensee, the organization will assign the plan author. If the FMP is prepared by MNRF, the MNRF district manager will assign the plan author.

The MNRF district manager will appoint an interdisciplinary planning team, which is a working body, with all members participating in plan preparation. The team will normally include individuals with expertise in forest management, information management, fish and wildlife, species at risk, biology, forest ecology, lands administration, parks and natural heritage, fire management, enforcement, forest modeling and analysis, as well as representatives from First Nation and Métis communities. The level of participation of team members will vary depending on their particular area of expertise. Planning team members should be familiar with the management unit. The planning team will include a registered professional forester employed by MNRF.



1 The MNRF district manager will offer an opportunity for the LCC to nominate one of its  
2 members to participate on the planning team. In addition, when applicable and where  
3 possible, the MNRF district manager will invite a person(s) who collectively represents  
4 overlapping licensees and beneficiaries of MNRF wood supply commitments that do not  
5 have ownership in the company holding the sustainable forest licence on the management  
6 unit to participate on the planning team.

7  
8 The MNRF district manager will offer an opportunity for a representative of each First  
9 Nation and Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or  
10 traditional uses, including established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights, may  
11 be affected by the preparation and implementation of the FMP, to participate on the  
12 planning team (Part A, Section 3.2).

13  
14 The MNRF district manager will appoint the chair of the planning team. The chair of the  
15 planning team ensures the FMP will be prepared in accordance with the terms of reference  
16 (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

17  
18 The MNRF regional resources manager will appoint a project manager for the preparation  
19 of the FMP. The project manager, with assistance from the plan author and planning team,  
20 will develop and maintain a project plan for the preparation of the FMP (Part A, Section  
21 1.1.2.2).

22  
23 Representatives from MNRF and other ministries (e.g., Ministry of Environment,  
24 Conservation and Parks) may be invited to participate as advisors to the planning team  
25 and/or plan reviewers. This advisory role is available to any provincial government ministry  
26 or agency, including those agencies responsible for Indigenous affairs. The MNRF district  
27 manager will notify other government ministries or agencies to determine whether those  
28 organizations have specific interests that should be addressed in the FMP. If the ministries  
29 or agencies have concerns, they will be invited to participate on the planning team.

30  
31 The MNRF regional resources manager, in consultation with the sustainable forest licensee,  
32 will establish a steering committee for the preparation of the FMP. The steering committee  
33 will normally include a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, a representative of  
34 the MNRF regional director, and the MNRF district manager. The steering committee will  
35 monitor the preparation of the FMP and will resolve issues and disagreements among  
36 planning team members to ensure plan preparation remains in accordance with the project  
37 plan. The steering committee will seek input from First Nation and Métis community  
38 representative(s) on the planning team when resolving issues and disagreements among  
39 planning team members.

#### Climate Change Consideration

The planning team may consider climate change when consulting with other government ministries or agencies. Inviting advisors and reviewers with knowledge and experience of

climate change is a helpful way to develop a FMP that aligns with current climate change policies and programs.

#### 1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference

The plan author, with assistance from the planning team, will develop the terms of reference for the preparation of the FMP. The terms of reference will contain:

- (a) the names and affiliations of the plan author, planning team members, steering committee members, the chair, the project manager, MNRF advisors, other advisors (e.g., staff from other government ministries, agencies and municipalities) and MNRF plan reviewers;
- (b) a description of the decision support system that will be used, and a discussion of the manner in which they will be used (Part A, Section 1.1.5);
- (c) the process for resolving disagreements between planning team members, including the involvement of the MNRF regional resources manager and/or the steering committee;
- (d) key plan preparation deliverables and identification of issues that may affect plan preparation; and
- (e) a communications plan, which outlines the costs and timing for communications efforts, including French and Indigenous translation, mailings, information forums and printing.

A senior official from the plan author's organization will sign the draft terms of reference to acknowledge the responsibilities of the plan author and other members of the organization on the planning team. The draft terms of reference will be submitted to the district manager and regional resources manager for review at least 60 days before issuing the first public notice. The MNRF will review and comment on the draft terms of reference within 15 days. If changes are required, the plan author will make the changes, obtain the signatures of the planning team members and the senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, and submit the final version to the MNRF district manager and regional resources manager. When the changes have been made to the satisfaction of the MNRF, the MNRF district manager and the MNRF regional resources manager will sign and endorse the terms of reference, and submit it to the MNRF regional director for approval.

The terms of reference will be approved prior to issuing the first public notice of the formal public consultation process.

### 1.1.2.2 Project Plan

The project manager, with assistance from the plan author and planning team, will develop the project plan for the preparation of the FMP.

The project plan will contain:

- (a) a schedule for plan preparation, including MNRF review and approval;
- (b) a schedule for endorsement of progress checkpoints, and identification of who will be responsible for confirmation of satisfactory completion of the required information (Part A, Section 1.1.6);
- (c) a schedule for confirmation of proposed operations, the proposed operations information to be confirmed, and the identification of who will be responsible for confirmation of satisfactory completion of the required information (Part A, Section 1.3.7);
- (d) a schedule for formal public consultation including any additional opportunities;
- (e) responsibilities and specific tasks of each planning team member, with deadlines for preparation. Planning team members will acknowledge their roles and responsibilities with their signatures on the project plan. Key tasks for the preparation of the FMP will be itemized, including identification of:
  - (i) who will be the liaison with First Nation and Métis communities;
  - (ii) who will be the liaison with resource-based tourist operators;
  - (iii) who will be the contact for the LCC;
  - (iv) who is responsible for notification of plan advisors;
  - (v) who will be responsible for updating MNRF's mailing list, the preparation of public notices and the summary of public consultation;
  - (vi) who will be required to attend information forums;
  - (vii) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific products (e.g., the social and economic description) in the preparation of the FMP;
  - (viii) who will participate in the development of the LTMD, and tasks they will be responsible for;
  - (ix) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific sections of the FMP; and
  - (x) who will be responsible for preparing the *Statement of Environmental Values* consideration document (Part B, Section 1.0);
- (f) identification of a forest analysis and modeling task team, which will normally include staff from the sustainable forest licensee and MNRF, and their associated responsibilities;
- (g) identification of other task teams (e.g., species at risk task team, Areas of Concern (AOC) task team, etc.), if required, and associated responsibilities;
- (h) identification of the responsibility for issuing the public notice for each stage of the formal public consultation process; and

- 1 (i) the roles and responsibilities of MNRF plan reviewers, including designation  
2 of a coordinator for the list of required alterations.  
3

4 Throughout plan preparation, the project plan will be updated to reflect changes to the  
5 preparation schedule, and changes in planning team membership and responsibilities.  
6

### 7 8 1.1.3 Local Citizens' Committee 9

10 A LCC will assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team during the  
11 preparation of the FMP. Normally, the committee will already be in place. The committee  
12 may be established for one FMP, or it may be an MNRF district committee established to  
13 assist in the preparation of FMPs for all management units in the district. The MNRF district  
14 manager may establish multiple LCCs or sub-committees for a management unit. The role of  
15 the LCC in the preparation and implementation of the FMP is described in detail in Part A,  
16 Section 2.2.  
17

18 Prior to commencing the preparation of a new FMP, the MNRF district manager will review  
19 the membership of the LCC and fill any vacancies. The review of the membership will ensure  
20 that a range and balance of interests is represented on the committee. New members will  
21 be appointed by the MNRF district manager. Part A, Section 3.3 describes the process for  
22 reviewing the First Nation and Métis community representation on the LCC.  
23

24 The committee may nominate a representative to serve as a member of the planning team  
25 (Part A, Section 1.1.2). The LCC, with assistance from MNRF, will prepare the terms of  
26 reference for the committee (Part A, Section 2.2.4).  
27

### 28 29 1.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements 30

31 The *Tourism and Forestry Industry Memorandum of Understanding* is an agreement  
32 between the government, the tourism industry and the forest industry on the development  
33 of resource stewardship agreements and related matters.  
34

35 To initiate the development of a resource stewardship agreement, the sustainable forest  
36 licensee will write a letter to each resource-based tourism operator in or adjacent to the  
37 management unit whose interests or uses may be affected by the preparation and  
38 implementation of the new FMP or previous FMPs. An updated list of resource-based  
39 tourism operators, both those with facilities on the management unit and those without  
40 facilities who use the natural resources of the management unit, will be provided to the  
41 sustainable forest licensee by the Ministry of Heritage, Sport, Tourism and Culture  
42 Industries.  
43

1 The MNRF's forest management guide relating to the protection of resource-based tourism  
2 values provides guidance for the development of specific proposals and prescriptions  
3 related to forest management activities in a resource stewardship agreement. The  
4 prescriptions developed in a resource stewardship agreement will be available for review by  
5 the public and First Nation and Métis communities during the preparation of the FMP.

6  
7 The MNRF will ensure that the parties (i.e., resource-based tourism operators and forest  
8 industry) are aware of the opportunities for the public and First Nation and Métis  
9 communities to review specific proposals and prescriptions in a resource stewardship  
10 agreement related to forest management activities.

#### 11 12 13 1.1.5 Decision Support Systems

14  
15 Decision support systems used in forest management planning are information systems that  
16 utilize strategic models, analysis tools, and databases in an interactive, analytical process, to  
17 support decision making. In forest management planning, the planning team uses decision  
18 support systems to facilitate the strategic analysis in the development of the LTMD and the  
19 planning of operations.

20  
21 Components (e.g., models or analysis tools) of the decision support system to be used for  
22 any of the following tasks will be approved by the director of MNRF's Crown Forests and  
23 Lands Policy Branch prior to inclusion in the terms of reference:

- 24  
25 (a) projection of forest conditions through time;  
26 (b) determination of the required types and levels of access, harvest, renewal,  
27 and tending activities;  
28 (c) determination of the available harvest area; and  
29 (d) assessment of sustainability.

30  
31 The decision support system used in the development of the LTMD will be able to produce  
32 the required products and analysis, and:

- 33  
34 (a) be capable of tracking the entire forested and non-forested landbase of a  
35 management unit through time;  
36 (b) evaluate all forested areas, whether managed or other, for their  
37 contribution to forest diversity and wildlife habitat;  
38 (c) evaluate all managed forested areas for their contribution to timber  
39 production;  
40 (d) produce projections of forest structure and composition for a minimum of  
41 160 years;  
42 (e) account for natural disturbance agents, such as forest fire, windthrow, and  
43 insects;  
44 (f) incorporate current and potential levels of silvicultural investments;

- (g) be capable of representing shelterwood and uneven-aged silvicultural systems (if applicable to the management unit);
- (h) be capable of representing alternative LTMDs; and
- (i) be capable of representing the movement of wood from management zones to destination(s).

#### 1.1.6 Progress Checkpoints

Progress checkpoints are key steps in the development and preliminary endorsement of the LTMD of a FMP (Part A, Section 1.2). The appropriate planning team members and advisors, as identified in the project plan, must confirm the satisfactory completion of the required information for each progress checkpoint and document their support, prior to receiving the confirmation of the satisfactory completion of the next check point. The MNRF regional resources manager will resolve any disagreements regarding the satisfactory completion of the required information.

The progress checkpoints are:

- (a) Planning Composite Inventory (Part A, Section 1.1.8.5);
- (b) Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition (Part A, Section 1.2.2);
- (c) Base Model Inventory and Base Model (Part A, Section 1.2.4);
- (d) Management Objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1);
- (e) Support for the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction, Determination of Sustainability and Primary Road Corridors (Part A, Section 1.2.7); and
- (f) Preliminary Endorsement of Long-term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.3.2).

The satisfactory completion of the required information for progress checkpoints (a) through (e) will be documented in the analysis package (Part A, Section 1.1.7). The MNRF regional director's preliminary endorsement of the LTMD will confirm the satisfactory completion of the required information for progress checkpoint (f).

The planning team may identify additional progress checkpoints in the planning team terms of reference.

During the development of the LTMD, previous steps and progress checkpoints in the planning process may be required to be revisited if new, changed or corrected information is available, which will significantly alter the LTMD.

### 1.1.7 Analysis Package

The analysis package summarizes the collaborative analysis conducted by the forest analysis and modeling task team in the development of the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2). The analysis package also documents task team support of progress checkpoints (a) through (e) (Part A, Section 1.1.6).

The analysis package will be updated throughout the development of the LTMD. The Forest Information Manual (FIM) will identify the required contents of the analysis package.

### 1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information

The project manager will coordinate the review and confirmation, update, or revision of the background information in the current FMP for use in the preparation of the new FMP. The background information that will be available may vary across the province, depending on the relevancy for the management unit.

The background information that will be available for the period of plan preparation includes:

- (a) sources of direction;
- (b) provincial audits and reports prepared by or for MNRF;
- (c) forest management guides, including new forest management guides that are scheduled for implementation;
- (d) the management unit annual report for the final year of implementation of the previous FMP, and management unit annual reports for the current FMP;
- (e) forest resources inventory;
- (f) fish and wildlife inventory information;
- (g) inventories and information for species at risk;
- (h) other resource inventories and information, including information on cultural heritage resource values, and mineral resource assessment information;
- (i) updated values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9);
- (j) roads and road water crossing inventory;
- (k) a social and economic description;
- (l) MNRF information describing current industrial wood requirements;
- (m) information on the historic forest condition; and
- (n) the existing First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s) (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

### 1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction

*The Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994 (CFSA)* provides legal direction for the management of Ontario's Crown forests.

The MNRF will ensure that documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-making are available to the planning team and the LCC at the outset of planning. Those sources of direction include:

- (a) MNRF's provincial goals, objectives and policies for natural resource management, particularly those relevant to forest management, such as the Statement of Environmental Values for the MNRF, MNRF's current corporate long-term strategic policy, Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests, and MNRF resource management policies;
- (b) Crown land use direction contained in Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, or its successor;
- (c) the existing approved FMP for the management unit, with particular emphasis on the section that addresses management objectives;
- (d) all other approved or draft resource management plans (e.g., fisheries management plans, park management plans, statements of conservation interest) that are relevant to the management unit;
- (e) any applicable government response statement published under subsection 12.1 of the ESA, all applicable habitat regulations made under the ESA, and any relevant ESA policy direction;
- (f) independent forest audits, action plans and related status reports for the management unit;
- (g) approaches for dealing with wood supply issues from wood supply strategy documents developed for each MNRF administrative region;
- (h) where available, strategic business direction for forest-based businesses dependent on the management unit, in particular the forest industry;
- (i) the results of the negotiations between MNRF and First Nation and Métis communities; and
- (j) other relevant information (e.g., legal agreements or licences regarding resource use on the management unit).

### 1.1.8.2 Provincial Audits and Reports

Audits or reports prepared by or for MNRF pertaining to forest management generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Reports on Forest Management, State of the Forest Report) are available on the Ontario Government website.



### 1.1.8.3 Forest Operations and Silviculture

The Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual sets out a list of guidance and direction (e.g., forest management guides) to be referenced in the development of forest management strategies and prescriptions, and implementation of forest management activities.

The MNRF will prepare a list of guides that are applicable to the management unit. The list will contain the titles, the specific editions of the guides, and the internet site where the guides can be accessed.

#### Climate Change Consideration

Ontario's forest management guides are a key component of Ontario's sustainable forest management framework. They are used by forest management planning teams to prepare FMPs and implement forest management operations. Guides are tools used to achieve healthy sustainable forests and help Crown managed forests look and function like natural forest ecosystems. By managing Ontario's Crown forests sustainably, the vulnerability of the natural environment to the impacts of climate change can be reduced.

### 1.1.8.4 Management Unit Annual Reports

The most recent management unit annual reports for the management unit will be available for use in the preparation of the FMP. The year five management unit annual report for the current FMP and the management unit annual report for the final year of implementation for the previous FMP will also be available. In particular, the conclusions and recommendations in the year five management unit annual report (e.g., the review of renewal and tending activities, spatial distribution of harvest areas) will provide information for confirming or changing the LTMD.

### 1.1.8.5 Planning Composite Inventory

The planning composite inventory for the management unit provides information required for forest management planning, including forest modeling, habitat modeling and landscape analyses. The planning composite inventory contains updated forest resources inventory information as a result of forest management activities and natural disturbances. The planning composite inventory also contains expected changes, based on anticipated harvest for the remainder of the current FMP. The detailed technical requirements, responsibility and timing for preparation and submission of the planning composite inventory are described in the FIM. Development of the planning composite inventory will be documented in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM.

1 The Crown forest portion of the management unit is the landbase used for decision-making  
2 in the FMP. For forest management planning purposes, the Crown forest is categorized as  
3 areas managed for timber production and other areas. Other areas include national and  
4 provincial parks and conservation reserves, and areas that have been designated through  
5 legal or policy means, or a land use decision, as unavailable for timber production. The  
6 areas managed for timber production include all remaining Crown forest lands.

7  
8 The total area of Crown forest on the management unit can contribute to the achievement  
9 of non-timber objectives in the FMP. For the planning team to consider provincial parks and  
10 conservation reserves on the management unit in the achievement of management  
11 objectives, forest inventory information for these areas must be available.

#### 12 13 14 **CHECKPOINT - PLANNING COMPOSITE INVENTORY**

15 This progress checkpoint will include information and products associated with the planning  
16 composite inventory.

##### 17 18 19 **1.1.8.6 Fish and Wildlife Inventory Information**

20  
21 Fish and wildlife inventory information for the management unit will be available for use in  
22 planning. The values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9) is the source of site-specific  
23 information for the fish and wildlife species present on the management unit.

24  
25 Fish and wildlife inventory information which will be available includes:

- 26 (a) known fish and wildlife species on the management unit;
- 27 (b) fish and wildlife species of local concern; and
- 28 (c) the slope of shoreland areas.

29  
30 Sources for fish inventory information include lake, stream and other aquatic habitat  
31 surveys. Sources for wildlife inventory information include population, range and habitat  
32 surveys.

##### 33 34 35 **1.1.8.7 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk**

36  
37 Inventories and information for species at risk on the management unit will be available for  
38 use in planning. The MNR's Natural Heritage Information Centre is the primary source of  
39 information for species at risk. The values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), is the source  
40 of site-specific information for the flora, fish and wildlife species present on the  
41 management unit. This information will contribute to the development of management  
42 objectives and the preparation of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of  
43 concern.

1 The species inventories and information which will be available include known sites of  
2 occurrence of flora, fish and wildlife species, and known sites of occurrence of their habitat.

3  
4 Publication of information on some values may be detrimental to their conservation, in  
5 which case the information will not normally be publicly available.

#### 6 7 8 1.1.8.8 Other Resource Inventories and Information 9

10 Other resource inventories and information for the management unit will be available for  
11 use in planning. This information will contribute to the update of values information, and  
12 the development of management objectives for the forest.

13  
14 The other resource inventories and information which will be available include:

- 15  
16 (a) information on each park and protected area, including the name,  
17 designation (e.g., provincial park, conservation reserve), class (e.g.,  
18 wilderness, recreation) and area (hectares);  
19 (b) cultural heritage resource values inventory information, including:  
20 (i) known archaeological sites and cultural heritage landscapes;  
21 (ii) First Nation and Métis values information; and  
22 (iii) areas of archaeological potential; and  
23 (c) mineral resource assessment information.  
24

25 Mineral resource assessment information are available from the Ministry of Energy,  
26 Northern Development and Mines.  
27

#### 28 29 1.1.8.9 Values Information 30

31 The MNRF will provide values information for the management unit, in accordance with the  
32 requirements of the FIM.  
33

34 Values information will be updated as information is assembled during the preparation and  
35 implementation of the FMP. The MNRF will update and provide the most current and  
36 relevant information available on values, including cultural heritage resource values, at each  
37 stage of public consultation. Information on values will generally be available to the public.  
38 When publication of the location of particular values may be detrimental to their  
39 conservation, this information will not be portrayed.  
40

41 The values information will be accompanied by text that includes:

- 42  
43 (a) a list of references to the sources of information in the database;  
44 (b) identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and

- 1 (c) identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being  
2 incomplete or missing.  
3

4 With regard to old growth forest values, all sites which contain old growth red and white  
5 pine forest communities, consistent with old growth indicators defined in MNRF's approved  
6 forest management guide(s) relating to landscape pattern and structure , will be identified  
7 and portrayed for the management unit in accordance with the FIM.  
8

9 Resource-based tourism values will be provided by MNRF to support the development of  
10 resource stewardship agreements (Part A, Section 1.1.4) and development of operational  
11 prescriptions and conditions to protect tourism values.  
12

13 The most up-to-date values information will be maintained at the appropriate MNRF office  
14 and will be available for public viewing.  
15  
16

#### 17 1.1.8.10 Roads and Water Crossings Inventory 18

19 The planning team will confirm and update the existing roads and water crossings inventory  
20 for the management unit, using the most up-to-date information available. For the purpose  
21 of a roads and water crossings inventory, existing roads and water crossings are those that  
22 fall within the *Public Lands Act*, 1990 (PLA), Section 48 definition of a road and are also  
23 reasonably capable of providing access for a four-wheel drive truck. For each road  
24 or road network, the planning team will confirm the:  
25

- 26 (a) road or road network identifier;  
27 (b) road class;  
28 (c) geographic location;  
29 (d) responsibility assignment for the road and water crossings; and  
30 (e) use management strategy.  
31

32 Existing roads, approved primary road corridors and access restrictions on roads will be  
33 portrayed. Roads and water crossings that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest  
34 licensee will be differentiated in the inventory.  
35  
36

#### 37 1.1.8.11 Social and Economic Description 38

39 A social and economic description will be prepared for the management unit, using  
40 available information, in accordance with the requirements of Appendix I. The social and  
41 economic description will describe the social and economic characteristics of:  
42

- (a) communities that derive substantial social and economic benefits (e.g., employment, municipal taxes) related to the forest industry or forest management activities;
- (b) forest resource-processing facilities; and
- (c) the other industrial and non-industrial users of the forest.

The description will be considered in the development of the LTMD and the planning of forest operations.

Municipal economic development officers and northern development officers from the Ministry of Energy, Northern Development and Mines may provide, verify or update information for the social and economic description. Forest users and planning team advisors may also provide some of the information.

#### 1.1.8.12 Historic Forest Condition

The description of the historic forest condition will be used in the development of the LTMD for the forest (Part A, Section 1.2). The historic forest condition will provide insight into the natural dynamics of the forest, the effects of past forest management, and the current forest composition. Historical management unit information will also be useful in understanding trends and changes in forest composition, and past use of forest resources from the management unit.

The planning team will review, and confirm, update or revise the summary of the historic forest condition. A revised summary of the history of the forest will be prepared if required. The summary will include a discussion of how the historic forest condition, past human activities, developments and natural processes relate to the current forest condition, and the associated management implications.

A summary of the history of the forest on the management unit will address:

- (a) historical use of forest resources;
- (b) historical development of access;
- (c) historical spatial distribution of forest harvest;
- (d) historical natural disturbances, including size and frequency information; and
- (e) changes to the forest, including:
  - (i) forest type, structure and composition;
  - (ii) forest landscape pattern;
  - (iii) forest productivity;
  - (iv) populations of flora and fauna;
  - (v) wildlife habitat; and
  - (vi) forest biodiversity.

1  
2 1.1.8.13 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report

3  
4 Part A, Section 3.6.1 describes the requirements for the preparation of the First Nation and  
5 Métis Background Information Report(s).

6  
7  
8 1.1.9 Development of a Consultation Approach with Each First Nation and Métis  
9 Community

10  
11 Part A, Section 3.0 describes the requirements to involve First Nation and Métis  
12 communities in forest management planning.

13  
14  
15 1.1.10 Stage One – Invitation to Participate

16  
17 After the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.1.1 to 1.1.9 have been completed, the planning  
18 team will commence public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A,  
19 Section 2.3.3.1, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in  
20 accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

21  
22  
23 **1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction**

24  
25  
26 1.2.1 Introduction

27  
28 This section describes the requirements for the development of the LTMD for the  
29 management unit, in preparation for stage two of public consultation (Part A, Section  
30 2.3.3.2). Figure A-2 provides an overview of the process involved in the development of the  
31 LTMD.

32  
33 The LTMD will be consistent with legislation and policy; consider direction in forest  
34 management guides; balance social, economic and environmental considerations; and  
35 provide for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.

36  
37 The planning team will review the LTMD in the current FMP, and confirm, update, or revise  
38 forest classifications, forest model assumptions, and/or management objectives. This  
39 approach will facilitate stability and consistency in management direction in successive  
40 FMPs.

41  
42 In the development of the LTMD, the current forest condition is described to provide  
43 context for the identification of desired forest and benefits, and the establishment of  
44 management objectives and indicators. Through strategic analysis, the LTMD will identify

the levels of access, harvest, renewal and tending activities that will balance the achievement of management objectives. The plan author and the planning team will prepare a preliminary determination of sustainability that will examine whether the LTMD provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.

Additional requirements regarding the development of the LTMD for specific management units (e.g., Whitefeather Forest) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

### 1.2.2 Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition

The planning inventory products are combined and updated with forest classification information to produce the base model inventory, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. The base model inventory and landscape level information are used to describe the current forest condition.

The base model inventory and current forest condition provide context for the identification of desired forest and benefits and management objectives.

The development of the forest classifications will be documented in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM.

Information related to management unit land summary will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

#### 1.2.2.1 Forest Units

The forest unit provides the primary classification for assumptions regarding how the forest develops, through time and in response to treatment. Forest units are applied to the entire Crown forest on the management unit. Forest units also play a role in assessments of biodiversity as directed by MNRF's forest management guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale where they are used to assess regional specific prescriptive indicators. Consequently, forest unit classifications must be able to align with prescriptive indicator classifications to ensure the landscape guide assessments and comparisons to ranges of natural variation are valid. The coarseness of the prescriptive indicators (e.g. each indicator consisting of several forest units) enables flexibility in plan forest units provided they can be rolled up to the prescriptive indicators.

Forest units may be divided, where appropriate, into analysis units for modelling purposes. Analysis units refine forest units to more accurately project forest development. The degree to which forest units and analysis units are represented in the models depends on the strategic models used in the decision support system (i.e., spatial versus non-spatial).

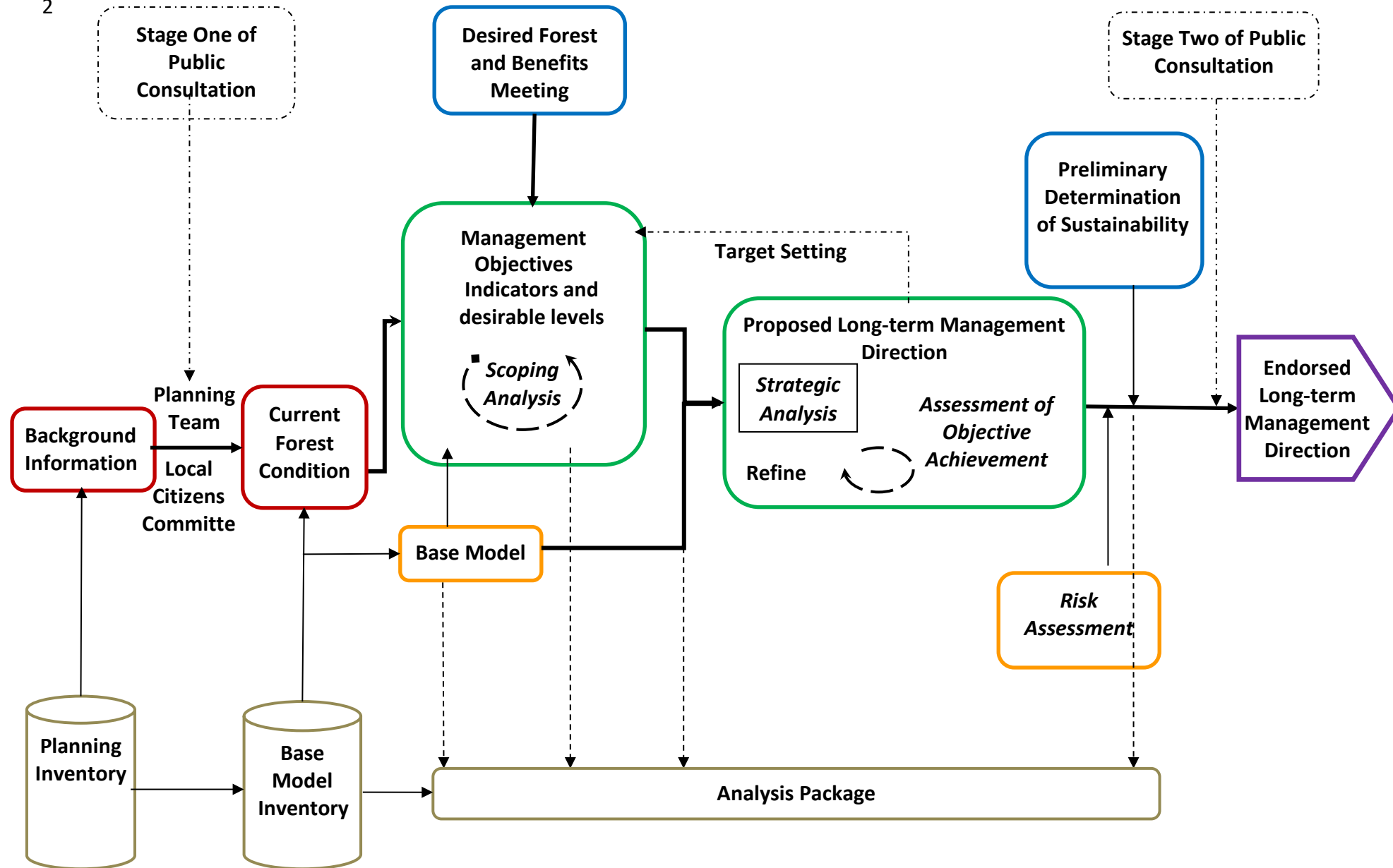
- 1 Forest units and analysis units will be described in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.
- 2 Forest units and any analysis units will be included in the base model inventory.
- 3
- 4 The managed Crown productive forest by forest unit will be summarized in the FMP in
- 5 accordance with the FIM.
- 6
- 7

#### 8 1.2.2.2 Management Decision Information

9

- 10 Forest stands will be classified based on management decision information, such as
- 11 silvicultural intensity, stage of management, and age (i.e., checkpoint 2). Silvicultural
- 12 intensity means the projected yield and not the treatments to be implemented.
- 13 Management decision information is provided in the base model inventory.





### 1.2.2.3 Forest Landscape Classes

Forest landscape classes are used to describe the current forest composition, structure and pattern at the landscape level. Landscape classes that are used to describe the current forest condition are defined in MNR's approved forest management guide(s) relating to landscape pattern and structure.

The forest landscape classes will be described in the FMP and portrayed in accordance with the FIM for use in the development of management objectives.

### 1.2.2.4 Other Forest Classifications

There may be other forest classifications to describe the current forest condition based on forest cover (e.g., habitat for wildlife species, habitat for forest-related species at risk). The requirement for other forest classifications will be determined by the planning team. The forest classifications will be described in accordance with the FIM for use in the development of management objectives.

## **CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR THE FOREST CLASSIFICATION AND CURRENT FOREST CONDITION**

This progress checkpoint will confirm support for the information and products associated with the forest classification in the base model inventory and the current forest condition (Part A Section 1.2.2).

### 1.2.3 Management Considerations

Management considerations are changes to the forest condition (e.g., large natural disturbance) or social, economic or environmental concerns that will be considered in the development of the LTMD. Management considerations will also be considered in the planning and implementation of operations.

Management considerations that may influence the development of the LTMD include:

- (a) major changes in landbase;
- (b) recent, large natural disturbances;
- (c) access to remote tourism areas;
- (d) species at risk;
- (e) First Nation and Métis community interests or First Nation and Métis values information (Part A, Section 3.6.1);
- (f) modified fire response;
- (g) shifts in markets or utilization;

- (h) other planning initiatives;
- (i) funding for silviculture; and
- (j) climate change.

Management considerations are often identified through the implementation of the current FMP. Other sources of information about management considerations include new science, new policy direction, independent forest audits and the associated action plans for the management unit, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s), and submissions from the LCC and the general public.

#### 1.2.3.1 Modified Fire Response

The majority of Ontario's forests are fire-dependent ecosystems that rely on periodic wildland fire as a renewal agent in the absence of forest management. Wildland fire can be used as a tool, where safe and appropriate, to support land and resource management objectives (e.g., hazard reduction, forest renewal, habitat management). The planning team, through dialogue with their local MNRF fire management representative, will determine if any candidate areas (landscape or site-specific) for modified fire response exist on the management unit. Modified fire response areas, if any, will be portrayed.

#### 1.2.4 Base Model

The base model serves as the common starting point for the development of the LTMD. The base model will include assumptions related to the land base (e.g., ecological zones, land use decisions), forest dynamics (e.g., forest succession, growth and yield), available silvicultural options, biological limits, and other model assumptions identified by the planning team. The planning team will review, and confirm, update or revise model assumptions from the current FMP. An analysis of past silviculture performance will provide the default silvicultural assumptions for the base model. The existing model assumptions will be reviewed in consideration of the best available science and information, new legislation, regulation and policy, and changes to forest condition and landbase.

Sensitivity analysis will be undertaken to provide insight on how key model assumptions influence how the forest develops naturally, and in response to forest management. Sensitivity analysis involves the modification of model inputs and examination of model outputs to develop and confirm model assumptions. The results of the sensitivity analysis supports the assumptions used in the base model.

The development of the base model will be documented in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM .

#### 1.2.4.1 Forest Dynamics – Growth and Yield

The combination of forest unit and silvicultural intensity (i.e., yield) will create a category of forest type called a silvicultural stratum. Yield curves or growth projections will be developed for each forest unit to predict the development of the forest through time. Growth and yield information from the MNRF (i.e., provincially coordinated program related to growth and yield), applicable to the management unit, will be used in the development of the yield curves or growth projections.

The yield curves or growth projections will:

- (a) be consistent with growth and yield models developed through MNRF's provincially coordinated program related to growth and yield;
- (b) be developed using relevant data, collected to approved data collection standards and accepted modelling principles;
- (c) be developed consistent with results of performance surveys;
- (d) be validated with independent local data, when available;
- (e) be developed to represent silvicultural strata;
- (f) be developed by species to provide separate estimates for yield by broad size or product group;
- (g) be developed to represent current utilization standards, and will provide separate estimates for yield in addition to current utilization standards (e.g., undersized and defect);
- (h) be consistent with natural forest succession inputs and other assumptions (e.g., harvest eligibility); and
- (i) provide resolution of information required to support the analytical tools used in planning and the development of regeneration standards.

Growth models or yield models not consistent with those developed through MNRF's provincially coordinated program related to growth and yield will require a sensitivity analysis and be subject to review and approval prior to use in the base model. The review of growth models or yield models for statistical and sampling considerations will be coordinated by MNRF's provincially coordinated program related to growth and yield.

#### 1.2.4.2 Forest Dynamics–Natural Forest Succession

Natural forest succession includes the changes in stand composition that occur through time as a result of aging, break-up, recruitment, non-stand replacing natural disturbances, and changes in climate (e.g., changes in soil moisture and growing season length). Natural forest succession also represents the natural succession of non-forested land types to forest. Natural forest succession can be represented in analysis tools as a transition from one forest unit to another (e.g., succession rule), and/or a change in species composition over time.

1 To predict future forest conditions, succession assumptions will be developed for each  
2 silvicultural stratum applicable to the forest.

#### 3 4 5 1.2.4.3 Forest Dynamics – Forest Disturbance

6  
7 Forest disturbance information for the managed forest includes stand replacing natural  
8 disturbances under fire suppression and post-disturbance succession. The MNRF's forest  
9 management guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale  
10 reflect expected rates of stand replacing natural disturbances (e.g., fire and insects).  
11 Landscape composition direction from MNRF's forest management guide(s) that addresses  
12 the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale will be accounted for in the decision  
13 support system. Disturbances that are single-event or infrequent are reflected as they occur  
14 through inventory updates (e.g., windthrow).

#### 15 16 17 1.2.4.4 Silvicultural Ground Rules

18  
19 A silvicultural ground rule (SGR) identifies the current forest condition, silvicultural system,  
20 future forest condition at maturity (e.g., silvicultural stratum), development information,  
21 management standards, regeneration standards, and acceptable alternative harvest,  
22 renewal and tending treatments. SGRs identify regeneration standards for the assessment of  
23 establishment (at a time when composition can be determined) and performance (at a time  
24 when growth can be measured). Establishment is the period between harvest and the  
25 completion of silvicultural treatments. Performance is the period between establishment  
26 and when projected yield can be assessed. SGRs will be developed for applicable forest unit  
27 – ecosite combinations on the management unit and will form the basis of the silvicultural  
28 options in the base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The recommendations from the analysis  
29 of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3) will be incorporated in the development of  
30 SGRs. SGRs will be developed using the approved silvicultural guide(s).

31  
32 The SGRs will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, under the  
33 direction of the plan author, using the silvicultural guide(s) identified by MNRF as applicable  
34 to the management unit. Planning efforts from current FMPs should be reviewed and  
35 confirmed, updated or revised in the development of SGRs. Local knowledge and the  
36 experience gained by the planning team from past management practices will also be  
37 considered (e.g., results of silvicultural monitoring).

38  
39 For each SGR, the most common silvicultural treatment package used on the management  
40 unit will be identified, as well as acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments for each of  
41 the harvest, renewal and tending activities. If a SGR includes a treatment not recommended  
42 in the applicable silvicultural guide(s), the treatment will be recorded as an exception. The  
43 rationale for that exception will be provided, and the monitoring program in the FMP will

1 describe the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that treatment  
2 (Part B, Section 4.7.2). The SGRs will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

#### 3 4 5 1.2.4.5 Silvicultural Options

6  
7 Silvicultural options will represent the broad options appropriate for the forest as described  
8 in the SGR(s). Modelled silvicultural options exhibit the following characteristics:

- 9  
10 (a) they apply to the same initial forest conditions (e.g., forest units and  
11 ecosites); and  
12 (b) they achieve the same future forest conditions (e.g., silvicultural stratum,  
13 regeneration standard).

14  
15 Each silvicultural option will identify the silvicultural stratum to which it applies and will have  
16 assumptions about the future forest condition, treatment costs, and success rates in  
17 response to treatments (e.g., post-harvest renewal transition rule). The silvicultural options  
18 of the base model will reflect the most commonly used SGR(s).

19  
20 A registered professional forester will have undertaken and documented an analysis of  
21 silvicultural activities in the year five management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.3).  
22 The analysis will provide input to assist in determining the necessary levels of renewal and  
23 tending operations, and associated expenditures required. The management unit annual  
24 report also provides recommendations that will be used in the development of silvicultural  
25 assumptions.

26  
27 The analysis of past silvicultural performance will serve as the default post-harvest renewal  
28 transition rules. The analysis of past silvicultural performance will consider:

- 29  
30 (a) results of past silvicultural treatments;  
31 (b) results of SGRs;  
32 (c) assessments of regeneration results; and  
33 (d) the relationship between new forest classifications and growth and yield  
34 assumptions and historic records.

35  
36 Any adjustments from the default post-harvest renewal transition rules will be supported by  
37 rationale. The rationale for adjustments to the default inputs will be consistent with one of  
38 the following methods:

- 39  
40 (a) analysis of additional empirical data/information (e.g., ecosite) using  
41 correlative techniques; or  
42 (b) analysis incorporating expert opinion with empirical data/information using a  
43 causal framework (e.g., Bayesian belief network).

Where expert opinion is applied, the basis for an adjustment (e.g., ecosite limitations) will require monitoring and reporting, which may be satisfied by an existing monitoring program. The post-harvest renewal transition rules will be documented in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM.

Silvicultural options will also specify the limits to which the option can be applied on the management unit (e.g., only ten percent of jack pine sites are suitable for seeding).

Sensitivity analysis of the treatments, costs and responses is required for proposed silvicultural options:

- (a) which reflect silvicultural practices not recommended in silvicultural guide(s);
- (b) where the outcome is uncertain; or
- (c) where the amount of area to which the strategy applies is uncertain.

#### **CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR BASE MODEL INVENTORY AND BASE MODEL**

This progress checkpoint will confirm support for the information and products associated with the base model and base model inventory (Part A, Section 1.2.4).

#### **1.2.5 Forest Sustainability**

The CFSA (section 2 (2)) requires sustainability of Crown forest to be determined in accordance with the FMPM. Sustainability is defined in the CFSA as “long term Crown forest health [which is] the condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem’s complexity while providing for the needs of the people of Ontario”.

The CFSA presents two guiding principles for the determination of sustainability in Ontario:

- (a) Large, healthy, diverse and productive Crown forests and their associated ecological processes and biological diversity should be conserved.
- (b) The long term health and vigour of Crown forests should be provided for by using forest practices that, within the limits of silvicultural requirements, emulate natural disturbances and landscape patterns while minimizing adverse effects on plant life, animal life, water, soil, air and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values.

The FMP must provide for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit. Determinations of the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit will be made during the preparation of the FMP and following the implementation of forest operations.

The preliminary determination of sustainability during the preparation of the FMP is conducted during the development of the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3) and updated, if necessary, after operations are planned for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.11). The determination is based on the assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).

In the preparation of a FMP, the determination of sustainability involves:

- (a) development of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1) that address:
  - (i) CFSA objective categories and required indicators (Figure A-3); and
  - (ii) other desired forest and benefits identified by the public, planning team, First Nation and Métis communities, and LCC;
- (b) assessment of the achievement of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);
- (c) development of a proposed LTMD that balances the achievement of the management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);
- (d) concluding that the FMP provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit (Part A, Sections 1.2.5.3 and 1.3.11).

The conclusion is a determination that the FMP provides for the long-term Crown forest health on the management unit, and has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values (e.g., through the application of forest management guides to protect values).

#### 1.2.5.1 Developing Management Objectives

The CFSA requires management objectives in a FMP to be compatible with the sustainability of the Crown forest (section 68 (3)(c)); and indicators of objective achievement to be identified (section 68 (3)(d)). Also, the CFSA (section 68 (5)(b)) requires each FMP to contain management objectives relating to:

- (a) social and economic objectives, including harvest levels and a recognition that healthy forest ecosystems are vital to the well-being of Ontario communities;
- (b) Crown forest diversity objectives, including consideration for the conservation of natural landscape patterns, forest structure and composition, habitat for animal life and the abundance and distribution of forest ecosystems;
- (c) objectives relating to the provision of forest cover for those values that are dependent on the Crown forest; and
- (d) silviculture objectives for the harvest, renewal and maintenance of the Crown forest.

If applicable, management objectives will be developed for forest-related species at risk on the management unit.



1 Figure A-3 identifies objective categories from the CFSA, indicators and timing of  
 2 assessment.

3

4 **Figure A-3: Indicators of Objective Achievement**

CFSA Objective Category	Indicator(s)	Timing of Assessment
Social and Economic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Long-term harvest levels</li> </ul>	Long-term projected available harvest area  Long-term projected available harvest volume by species group  Long-term projected available harvest volume by broad size or product group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• During development of proposed LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3)</li> </ul>
Social and Economic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Involvement in forest management planning</li> </ul>	Opportunities for involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in plan development  LCC's self-evaluation of its effectiveness in plan development	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Draft Plan</li> </ul>

5

CFSA Objective Category	Indicator(s)	Timing of Assessment
<b>Forest Diversity</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Natural Landscape Patterns</li> <li>• Forest Structure and Composition</li> <li>• Distribution and abundance of forest ecosystems</li> </ul>	<b>Landscape pattern</b>  Area by forest unit and development stage  Amount and distribution of old growth forest  (refer to forest management guides for indicators)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• During development of proposed LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3)</li> <li>• Upon completion of operational planning (Part A, Section 1.3.11)</li> <li>• Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)</li> </ul>
<b>Forest Diversity and Provision of forest cover</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Habitat for animal life</li> </ul>	<b>Habitat for forest-related species</b>  Habitat for forest-related species at risk (refer to forest management guides for indicators)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• During development of proposed LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3)</li> <li>• Upon completion of operational planning (Part A, Section 1.3.11)</li> <li>• Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)</li> </ul>
<b>Social and Economic</b> <b>Planned harvest levels</b> <b>Community well-being</b>	Actual harvest area, by forest unit. (% of planned harvest area)  Actual harvest volume, by species group. (% of planned harvest volume)	Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)

CFSA Objective Category	Indicator(s)	Timing of Assessment
Silviculture	<p>Percent of harvested forest area assessed as successfully established by forest unit</p> <p>Planned and actual percent of harvest area treated by silvicultural strata</p> <p>Planned and actual percent of area successfully regenerated to the target forest unit by forest unit</p>	Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)
Ecological Sustainability <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Healthy forest ecosystems</li> </ul>	<p>Percent of forest operation inspections in non-compliance, by activity and remedy type</p> <p>Compliance with management practices that prevent, minimize or mitigate site damage (% of inspections in non-compliance, by remedy type)</p> <p>Compliance with management practices that protect water quality and fish habitat (% of inspections in non-compliance, by remedy type)</p>	Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)
Social and Economic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Harvest levels, community well-being</li> </ul>	Managed Crown forest (hectares) available for timber production	Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)

1  
2

1 The LTMD and the determination of sustainability require the development of management  
2 objectives and associated indicators, desirable levels and targets. Summary information  
3 associated with the development of management objectives will be documented in the  
4 analysis package in accordance with the FIM.

5  
6 A management objective is a statement of a quantitative or qualitative desired future forest  
7 benefit or condition developed specifically for the management unit to be achieved through  
8 forest management planning and/or the manipulation of forest cover. A management  
9 objective may have an implementation time frame greater than the 10-year period of the  
10 FMP.

11  
12 Each management objective will have an indicator(s). An indicator is a systematically  
13 measured and assessed quantitative or qualitative variable, which when observed  
14 periodically, demonstrates trends. Indicators are used to assess the effectiveness of forest  
15 management planning and/or activities in achieving management objectives, and the  
16 sustainability of the forest.

17  
18 The indicators will be assessed at various times during the preparation and implementation  
19 of the FMP. Figure A-3 identifies which indicators that will be assessed during plan  
20 preparation; during plan implementation; or the indicators may be assessed during  
21 preparation and during implementation.

22  
23 A desirable level will be established for each indicator. A desirable level is a measurable  
24 amount (i.e., specific number, range or trend) for an indicator to be achieved and  
25 maintained over time. Desirable levels that are not provided directly by guides or other  
26 sources of direction will be established locally by the planning team with input from the LCC.  
27 Achievement of desirable levels may require a longer time frame than the modelling  
28 horizon.

### 29 30 31 Management Zones

32  
33 Management zones are geographical areas within a management unit that provide spatial  
34 context when preparing the LTMD or planning proposed operations. The two types of  
35 management zones are strategic management zones and operational management zones.

36  
37 A strategic management zone may influence strategic analysis, and operational planning.  
38 Strategic management zones may represent either strategic objectives (e.g., caribou habitat  
39 objectives, achieve landscape pattern objectives) or areas with distinct ecological  
40 characteristics. If applicable, strategic zones may be used to assess the spatial distribution of  
41 harvest over the first four FMP periods (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).

1 While some zones may be represented in the base model (e.g., ecological basis for different  
2 yield curves), zones usually reflect objectives (e.g., Dynamic Caribou Habitat Schedule for  
3 caribou habitat objectives), and are defined during objective development and  
4 determination of the LTMD.

5  
6 The planning team may identify strategic management zones considering the following  
7 criteria:

- 8
- 9 (a) balance of harvest in proximity to forest resource processing facilities or
- 10 demand centres;
- 11 (b) accessibility of harvest (e.g., topography, land ownership, existing road
- 12 infrastructure, land use decisions, species at risk);
- 13 (c) the achievement of landscape pattern objectives;
- 14 (d) consistency with strategic access strategy; and
- 15 (e) additional strategic criteria applicable to the management unit (e.g., moose
- 16 emphasis areas, enhanced silviculture areas, large deer yards).
- 17

18 If applicable, strategic management zones will be included in the appropriate planning  
19 inventory product in accordance with the FIM and represented in the model used to  
20 determine the LTMD.

21  
22 Operational management zones represent areas with distinct operational constraints (e.g.,  
23 accessibility, wildlife, fisheries or other constraints on forest operations). Operational  
24 management zones may be used on management units with significant variation in forest  
25 level operational characteristics. If applicable, operational management zones will be  
26 included in the appropriate planning inventory product in accordance with the FIM.

### 27 28 29 Desired Forest and Benefits Meeting

30  
31 The MNRF district manager will host a desired forest and benefits meeting attended by the  
32 planning team, plan advisors, LCC, and First Nation and Métis communities. Part A, Section  
33 3.5.1.1 describes the requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement in the  
34 desired forest and benefits meeting. The MNRF district manager may also invite interested  
35 members of the public. The purpose of the meeting is to inform participants of the  
36 background information and to provide a forum for participants to share their respective  
37 interests in the management of the forest. The meeting will provide input for the  
38 development of objectives, indicators and desirable levels by:

- 39
- 40 (a) identifying local desired forest and benefits;
- 41 (b) reviewing management objectives, indicators, desirable levels, and targets in
- 42 the current FMP;
- 43 (c) reviewing indicators and target achievement from the year five management
- 44 unit annual report for the current FMP; and

- 1 (d) reviewing management objectives and indicators from the FMPM and forest  
2 management guides.

3  
4 A summary report of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting will be prepared.  
5

### 6 7 Setting Desired Levels 8

9 Management objectives will be developed to address required indicators from Figure A-3.  
10 Management objectives may also be developed to address desired forest and benefits  
11 identified by the planning team and LCC with input from the public and First Nation and  
12 Métis communities (e.g., habitat for wildlife species). The planning team will review and  
13 confirm, update, or revise management objectives from the current FMP. The development  
14 of management objectives will also consider the background information (Part A, Section  
15 1.1.8), in particular, forest management guides (Part A, Section 1.1.8.3), and  
16 recommendations from the year five management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.0).  
17

18 Desirable levels that are not provided directly by guides or other sources of direction are  
19 refined through scoping analysis. Scoping analysis is an iterative process that involves a  
20 series of investigations to provide insight to what the forest is capable of producing to  
21 develop realistic and feasible desirable levels for objective indicators. Scoping investigations  
22 will consider implications on wood supply, forest conditions, habitat, and other non-timber  
23 resources for the short term, medium term, and long term.  
24

25 The following investigations will be considered in the development of desirable levels:  
26

- 27 (a) An investigation into the ability of the forest to meet forest diversity and  
28 forest cover desirable levels (based on current forest condition and forest  
29 dynamics); and  
30 (b) An investigation and assessment of the ability of the forest to continue to  
31 supply forest benefit levels associated with the current FMP.  
32

33 The management objectives, indicators and the timing of assessment for each indicator will  
34 be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.  
35

### 36 37 Harvest Eligibility Criteria 38

39 Criteria will be developed to identify areas that could reasonably be harvested (i.e., eligible  
40 harvest areas). The criteria will be consistent with the direction and standards in MNRF's  
41 applicable forest management guide(s) (e.g., the guide(s) that address the conservation of  
42 biodiversity at the landscape scale) and incorporated in strategic modelling.  
43

44 Considerations for the development of the criteria include:

- (a) the maturity of forest stands (age classes);
- (b) operability of an area (e.g., physical, topographical, and economic constraints);
- (c) species at risk requirements;
- (d) strategic and operational management zones;
- (e) wildlife habitat requirements;
- (f) industrial wood requirements;
- (g) previous commitments to harvest areas;
- (h) provision for continuity of operations; and
- (i) the need for insect pest management and salvage operations.

#### **CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES**

This progress checkpoint will confirm support for information and products associated with the development of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1).

#### **1.2.5.2 Development of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction**

The base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4) will be used as the starting point for the development of the proposed LTMD.

The decision support system will be used to conduct strategic analysis. Strategic analysis is an iterative process used to determine the locations, types and levels of access, harvest, renewal, and tending activities required to balance the achievement of management objectives associated with the management of forest cover, and to develop achievable targets in the proposed LTMD.

A target will be established for each indicator. A target is a measurable amount (i.e., specific number, range, or trend) for an indicator to be achieved within a specific timeframe. The target will be consistent with the desirable level of the indicator, or the target will be established to encourage movement towards the desirable level. If the target is moving away from the desirable level in the short term, it must be demonstrated that there is movement towards the desirable level in the medium or long term. At a minimum, a target will be established for each indicator assessed during plan implementation for the first 10-year period of the FMP.

The establishment of targets for each indicator will consider:

- (a) the current forest condition;
- (b) a balance of social, economic and environmental considerations;
- (c) the associated indicator and the desirable level;
- (d) the potential achievement for the short term (10 years), medium term and long term; and

- 1 (e) projections from past FMPs and historical levels of objective achievement.

2  
3 In addition, for harvest level indicators, the targets will also consider:

- 4  
5 (a) historic wood utilization;  
6 (b) current industrial wood requirements;  
7 (c) Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels, as identified  
8 in the Provincial Wood Supply Strategy; and  
9 (d) maximum even-flow harvest volume by major species group.

10  
11 The concepts of medium term and long term are indicator specific. The actual timeframes  
12 for medium term and long term are indicator specific and will be identified in the FMP in  
13 accordance with the FIM.

14  
15 Strategic modelling projects how the forest develops over time, in terms of its structure and  
16 composition in response to different types, levels, and spatial distribution of forest  
17 management activities. Strategic modelling will include 160-year projections. Strategic  
18 modelling will be used to demonstrate that the effects of projected forest management  
19 activities in the proposed LTMD for the period of the FMP provide acceptable projections of  
20 forest management activities in the future.

21  
22 The development of the proposed LTMD will be documented in the analysis package in  
23 accordance with the FIM.

## 24 25 26 Objective Assessment

27  
28 The achievement of applicable management objectives will be assessed using the results of  
29 decision support systems. Objectives will be assessed individually, in relation to indicators,  
30 desirable levels, and targets, and in consideration of other objectives to balance the  
31 achievement of management objectives. The management objective information and an  
32 assessment of objective achievement will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the  
33 FIM. The achievement of management objectives that do not require decision support  
34 systems will also be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

35  
36 Assessment of objectives directly affected by spatial aspects of forest operations are  
37 described in Part A, Sections 1.2.5.2 and 1.3.9. Following spatial assessments, it may be  
38 necessary to re-examine the preferred harvest areas and/or targets to balance the  
39 achievement of management objectives. Any adjustments to targets will consider the  
40 desirable levels for the indicators and will have rationale provided.



1  
2 The assessment of objective achievement will consider:

- 3  
4 (a) if the desirable level is achieved and/or maintained during the plan period or  
5 in the future.  
6 (b) if the desirable level is not achieved and/or maintained during the plan  
7 period. If so, the following questions need to be answered:  
8 (i) Is the difference between the desirable level and the target substantial?  
9 (ii) Will progress be made towards achievement of the desirable level?  
10 (iii) What is the rationale for the difference?  
11 (c) if there are trends in objective achievement which raise concerns.  
12  
13

#### 14 Available Harvest Area

15

16 The harvest area by forest unit from the strategic analysis for the first 10-year period is the  
17 available harvest area for the FMP. Areas selected for harvest for the 10-year period will not  
18 exceed the available harvest area by forest unit.  
19

20 Adjustments to the available harvest area during operational planning will be supported by  
21 analysis demonstrating the achievement of management objectives (spatial and non-spatial)  
22 beyond the 10-year plan period.  
23

24 Management zones may be used to address the spatial distribution of harvest areas through  
25 time.  
26

27 Documentation of modelling outputs will include:

- 28  
29 (a) projected forest condition for the Crown productive forest;  
30 (b) projected habitat for selected wildlife species, if identified by the planning  
31 team;  
32 (c) projected available harvest area by forest unit; and  
33 (d) projected available harvest volume by species group, and broad size or  
34 product group.  
35  
36

#### 37 Preferred and Optional Harvest Areas

38

39 The available harvest area serves as the upper limit for the selection of the preferred areas  
40 for harvest for the 10-year period. The preferred areas for harvest for the 10-year period will  
41 be selected from the eligible harvest area. In the identification of the preferred areas, the  
42 retained areas (i.e., reserves and areas retained from harvest to meet objectives or guide  
43 requirements) accounted for in the strategic analysis will be considered. The preferred  
44 harvest areas will match, as closely as practical, the projections of forest harvest in the

1 strategic model, in terms of strategic management zones, age class and/or stage of  
2 management. Visual aesthetics, opportunities for harvesting fuelwood, and operational  
3 management zones will be considered when identifying preferred areas for harvest.

5 The preferred areas for harvest for the 10-year period will be identified and portrayed. All  
6 eligible areas that are not identified as preferred areas for harvest are considered to be  
7 optional harvest areas for the 10-year period. The optional harvest areas will be identified  
8 and portrayed, and may be ranked in order of preference.

10 The landscape pattern will be assessed to determine whether the identified preferred  
11 harvest areas provide for the achievement of landscape pattern objectives. Changes to the  
12 preferred harvest areas may be required as a result of these assessments.

14 The assessment of management objectives and indicators affected by the locations of  
15 harvest areas will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

17 If there are significant changes to the preferred areas of operations during operational  
18 planning, the assessment of landscape pattern objectives and indicators will be updated  
19 after the planning of operations has been completed (Part A, Section 1.3.9).

#### 22 Spatial Assessment

24 Management objectives and indicators affected by the location of the preferred areas for  
25 harvest for the 10-year period will be assessed for achievement of spatial objectives  
26 following identification of the preferred harvest areas.

28 The projected distribution of harvest over the first four FMP periods (i.e. 40 years) will be  
29 assessed for:

- 31 (a) feasibility of the spatial distribution of the harvest (e.g., operational,  
32 accessibility, other land use decisions); and
- 33 (b) economic feasibility of the harvest (e.g., balancing wood cost).

35 The projected distribution of harvest for the first four FMP periods will be portrayed.

#### 38 Social and Economic Assessment

40 A social and economic assessment will be prepared for the proposed LTMD. The assessment  
41 will be prepared using a social and economic model, or a qualitative analysis based on the  
42 data in the social and economic description (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11, Appendix I). The  
43 assessment will identify the expected social and economic impacts of implementing the  
44 LTMD. The assessment will examine how the quantity of harvest volume supplied to the

wood-processing facilities, and the silvicultural investment requirements, may affect the communities, forest resource processing facilities, and the other industrial and non-industrial users of the forest identified in the social and economic description (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11).

### Risk Assessment

A risk assessment will be prepared for the proposed LTMD. The assessment will investigate risks associated with the implementation of the LTMD. When identifying risks, the planning team will consider access limitations, recommendations identified in independent forest audits, and the year five management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.5).

The risk assessment will include an investigation of recent wood utilization (e.g., last 10 years) and other identified risks, and an evaluation of the potential implications on the achievement of management objectives.

### 1.2.5.3 Preliminary Determination of Sustainability

The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider:

- (a) the collective achievement of objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);
- (b) the preliminary spatial assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);
- (c) the social and economic assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2); and
- (d) the risk assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).

The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider whether the proposed LTMD provides for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit, and will conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

The preliminary determination of sustainability will be documented in the summary of the proposed LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.7). The documentation of the preliminary determination of sustainability will:

- (a) describe how the LTMD provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit;
  - (i) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved;
  - (ii) discuss the preliminary spatial assessment;
  - (iii) discuss the social and economic assessment; and
  - (iv) discuss the risks to implementing the proposed LTMD; and

- 1           (b)     provide a conclusion that the LTMD provides for the sustainability of the  
2                   Crown forest.

3  
4     The planning team will present the proposed LTMD and the preliminary determination of  
5     sustainability to the LCC. The MNRF district manager will follow the requirements for First  
6     Nation and Métis communities in Part A, Section 3.5.1.1.

#### 7 8 9     1.2.6   Primary Road Corridors

10  
11    Primary roads provide principal access for the management unit, and are constructed,  
12    maintained and used as the main road system on the management unit. Primary roads are  
13    normally permanent roads, although there may be significant periods of time when specific  
14    primary roads are not required for forest management purposes. The planning of roads will  
15    be completed by a registered professional forester.

16  
17    The planning requirements in this section will apply to corridors for new primary roads  
18    which are required for forest management purposes for a 20-year horizon, including  
19    extensions to existing primary roads. The planning requirements involve the consideration  
20    and environmental analysis of a reasonable range of practical alternative one kilometre wide  
21    corridors

22  
23    Primary road corridors will be consistent with projected harvest distribution for the next four  
24    planning periods. Primary road corridors in the previous FMP, within which a road has not  
25    yet been constructed, will be reviewed. If the corridor is confirmed, no further corridor  
26    planning will be required. If changes to the use management strategy for the road are  
27    required, the planning requirements in Part A, Section 1.3.6.7 and Appendix III will apply.

28  
29    If changes to a corridor, or extensions to a confirmed corridor are required, the planning  
30    requirements in this section will apply.

31  
32    In identifying a reasonable range of alternative corridors for analysis, there will be  
33    consideration of:

- 34  
35           (a)     the projected harvest distribution for the next four FMP periods (i.e., 40  
36                   years);  
37           (b)     the degree to which physical conditions, identified values, and significant  
38                   engineering or safety factors in the area, act as constraints or provide  
39                   opportunities, including possibilities for development of other resources;  
40           (c)     any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario's  
41                   Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, management statement of conservation  
42                   interest, park management plans, lake management plans, resource  
43                   stewardship agreements); and

- (d) the results of consultation with known interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities.

The environmental analysis of the alternative corridors will consist of:

- (a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of:
- (i) providing access to areas eligible for harvest, renewal and tending operations;
  - (ii) potential effects on identified values; and
  - (iii) providing access to any remote First Nation and Métis communities which were previously inaccessible by road;
- (b) consideration of reasonable use management strategies (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7) which include public access provisions or restrictions, maintenance provisions, and, where appropriate, decommissioning provisions and transfer provisions; and
- (c) a consideration of relative costs related to road construction and use management, including maintenance, transfer and decommissioning costs.

Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new primary road will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix II.

If a new primary road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the *Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act*, (2006)(PPCRA) and applicable policy will apply. The requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves will also apply.

The confirmed corridors from the previous FMP and the alternative corridors for each new primary road, for the next 20 years will be identified and portrayed.

#### 1.2.7 Summary of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

To facilitate the public review, a summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest will be produced. The summary will include:

- (a) text to describe:
- (i) the assessment of objective achievement with rationale for indicators that are not moving towards the desirable level;
  - (ii) the preliminary determination of sustainability;
  - (iii) the risks to implementing the proposed LTMD; and
  - (iv) the rationale for the preferred areas for harvest, including a discussion of how the applicable MNRF guide(s) were considered.
- (b) the information products in accordance with FIM to describe:
- (i) objectives and assessment of objective achievement;

- (ii) available harvest area and volume;
- (iii) preferred and optional harvest areas for the 10-year period;
- (iv) confirmed primary road corridors;
- (v) new alternative primary road corridors; and
- (vi) if applicable, modified fire response areas.

The summary of the proposed LTMD will be written in a clear and concise manner to facilitate the public review of the proposed LTMD.

#### **CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR THE PROPOSED LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION, DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY AND PRIMARY ROAD CORRIDORS**

This progress checkpoint will confirm support by the MNRF for the information and products associated with the LTMD, the preliminary determination of sustainability and the primary road corridors developed in Part A, Section 1.2. to 1.2.7.

#### **1.2.8 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction**

After the requirements in sections 1.2 to 1.2.7 have been completed, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.2, and the First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

### **1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations**

#### **1.3.1 Introduction**

This section describes the requirements for the planning of operations for the FMP, in preparation for stage three of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.3). The information and products which are required to be available at the stage three information forum for the review of proposed operations are described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.3.

Planning efforts from current FMPs will be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised in the development of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern, SGRs and road use management strategies.

The selection and confirmation of areas of operations is an iterative process. There may be adjustments to the areas of operations until submission of the final plan for MNRF approval. Areas of operations will be adjusted as a result of the planning of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern, the availability of new or better information and in response to public comments.

During the selection of areas of operations and development of other operational aspects of the FMP (e.g., use management strategies, silvicultural ground rules, operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern), the MNRF will provide confirmation to the plan author and planning team that the proposed operational information satisfies the requirements of the FMPM (Part A, Section 1.3.7). The timelines and operational information for MNRF to provide confirmation to the plan author and planning team will be completed in accordance with the project plan for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2)

This confirmation by MNRF is intended to support the planning of operations and the preparation of the draft FMP to assure with some certainty the satisfactory completion of proposed operations, and to minimize alterations following public review and First Nation and Métis involvement and consultation on the draft FMP. Circumstances may arise which require re-examination of the proposed operations (e.g., changes to proposed operations due to results of consultation, identified issues).

Additional requirements regarding the planning of operations specific management units (e.g., Whitefeather Forest) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

#### **1.3.2 Preliminary Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction**

Upon completion of the public review of the proposed LTMD for the forest (Part A, Section 2.3.3.2), prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2, MNRF will review any comments received as a result of the public review. A list of required

modifications, and the rationale for those modifications, will be prepared, signed, and certified by an MNRF registered professional forester. Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, the list of required modifications, and the accompanying rationale, will be provided to the plan author within 15 days of completion of the public review of the proposed LTMD.

The plan author will address MNRF's list of required modifications, which may result in further analysis and modeling being required. The MNRF regional director will provide preliminary endorsement of the LTMD after the required modifications have been satisfactorily addressed.

The MNRF regional director's preliminary endorsement is intended to enable planning of operations to proceed with some certainty, and to minimize alterations to the LTMD in the draft FMP. However, circumstances may arise which require re-examination of the LTMD (e.g., major changes in information and assumptions used in modeling). A summary of the LTMD, for which the MNRF regional director has provided preliminary endorsement, will be prepared. The summary will be an updated version of the summary of the proposed LTMD that was previously prepared (Part A, Section 1.2.7).

## **CHECKPOINT - PRELIMINARY ENDORSEMENT OF LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**

### **1.3.3 Selection of Areas of Operations**

Harvest, renewal and tending areas will be identified.

#### **1.3.3.1 Harvest Areas**

In consideration of comments received on the preferred and optional harvest areas at stage two, the preferred harvest areas will be selected for the 10-year period. Areas selected as preferred for the 10-year period will become the planned harvest areas. Areas not selected as preferred harvest areas are optional harvest areas. The planned harvest areas and the optional harvest areas will be portrayed.

The planned harvest areas for the 10-year period will not exceed the available harvest area for each forest unit. The planned harvest areas will match, as closely as practical, the projections of forest operations in the LTMD, in terms of management zone and age class and/or stage of management. In the selection of areas for harvest, the direction and standards in MNRF's approved forest management guide(s) will be considered. The rationale for the planned harvest areas for the 10-year period will be documented.



1 The planned harvest areas for the 10-year period will have unique harvest block identifiers  
2 and will be portrayed.

3  
4 If salvage operations are planned during preparation of the FMP, salvage harvest areas will  
5 be identified and portrayed. Salvage area is additional to the planned harvest area and does  
6 not count against the available harvest area.

7  
8 The planned harvest area for the 10-year period will be summarized in the FMP in  
9 accordance with the FIM.

10  
11 The volume associated with the available harvest area and planned harvest area will be  
12 summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

13  
14 The planned harvest volumes in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements for  
15 the management unit will be identified as unutilized. The area and volume associated with  
16 the planned harvest area and the projected utilization of the planned harvest volume will be  
17 summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

18  
19 The projected wood utilization by mill will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the  
20 FIM.

#### 21 22 23 1.3.3.2 Contingency Area

24  
25 During the 10-year period of the FMP, circumstances (e.g., wildfire, blowdown, operational  
26 constraints, markets) may cause some of the planned harvest area to be unavailable or  
27 unfeasible for harvest. To accommodate such circumstances, contingency area for harvest  
28 operations will be identified and planned. The contingency area will serve to replace area for  
29 harvest during the 10-year period of the FMP, and will only be used if required.

30  
31 Sufficient contingency area will be selected from the optional harvest areas, to support a  
32 minimum of one year, and a maximum of two years, of harvest operations. The contingency  
33 areas will have unique harvest block identifiers. The contingency areas and associated  
34 unique identifiers will be portrayed.

35  
36 The area and volume of the contingency area will be summarized in the FMP in accordance  
37 with the FIM.

38  
39 An administrative amendment to the FMP will be required to permit forest operations to  
40 proceed in the contingency area (Part C, Section 2.0).

#### 41 42 43 1.3.3.3 Renewal and Tending Areas

44

1 Areas for renewal and tending operations will be identified and portrayed for the 10-year  
2 period. Those areas will include: all of the areas selected for harvest; areas previously  
3 harvested during the current or previous FMP(s) and not yet renewed; areas of natural  
4 disturbances which require renewal; and areas which require tending.

5  
6 The analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3), will be used in the planning of  
7 renewal and tending operations. The types and levels of renewal and tending operations  
8 planned for the 10-year period will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.  
9 The levels of renewal and tending operations will be consistent with the projected levels of  
10 the proposed LTMD and the results of the analysis of silvicultural activities.

#### 11 12 13 1.3.3.4 Silvicultural Trial Areas

14  
15 Silvicultural trial areas are optional and can potentially occur on harvest, renewal or tending  
16 areas. The MNR's silvicultural guide(s) describes the requirements for the preparation,  
17 review and approval of silvicultural trial areas. The FMP will include the following  
18 information for silvicultural trial areas:

- 19  
20 (a) treatment and forest type eligibility;  
21 (b) limitations (e.g., size and number); and  
22 (c) any applicable renewal standards.

23  
24 Silvicultural trial areas will be planned and implemented using the approved silvicultural  
25 guide(s). Silvicultural trial areas will be implemented in accordance with an approved SGR  
26 (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2).

27  
28 The plan author and planning team will consider what forest types are eligible for trial area  
29 implementation. When determining if any forest types are eligible for trial area  
30 implementation, the effect of a failed trial area on achievement of FMP targets will be  
31 considered.

#### 32 33 34 1.3.4 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan

35  
36 There may be situations where harvest operations from the current approved FMP are not  
37 completed before expiry of the plan. Provisions for bridging operations and second-pass  
38 harvest operations allow for harvest of these areas in the new FMP.

##### 39 40 41 1.3.4.1 Bridging Operations

42  
43 Areas of bridging operations will be identified to allow for the harvest of areas from the  
44 current approved FMP in the new FMP. Candidate areas for bridging operations will be

identified from areas scheduled to be accessed and harvested in the current approved plan. Candidate areas for bridging operations will be portrayed in the new FMP in accordance with the FIM and will be updated during the preparation of the FMP.

The plan author and planning team will determine the amount of bridging area by forest unit (i.e., based on a subset of the forecast depletions of the current FMP), the location of bridging areas, and the timeframe in which bridging operations may be completed. The amount, location and timeframe will be identified in the new FMP. The bridging harvest areas contribute to the achievement of the available harvest area in the current FMP but not the new FMP. The new FMP will describe how the harvest of bridging areas will be considered in the preparation of annual work schedules and management unit annual reports (i.e., timing for reporting against current FMP) developed in accordance with the new FMP.

#### 1.3.4.2 Second-Pass Harvest Operations

For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may have been planned in two passes, but only the first pass may have been completed before the expiry of the current approved FMP. Areas planned for second-pass harvest, where only the first pass has occurred by the expiry of the current FMP, will be identified to allow for completion of harvest operations. Areas planned for second-pass harvest operations will be identified and portrayed, and will be updated during the preparation of the FMP. The second-pass harvest areas do not contribute to the achievement of harvesting the available harvest area of the new FMP.

An estimate of the volume associated with second-pass harvest areas will be prepared.

#### 1.3.5 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Operations, and Conditions on Roads, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits

For the areas of operations for the 10-year period, including contingency areas, prescriptions and conditions will be developed. Operational prescriptions for areas of concern will be developed for all harvest, renewal and tending, and protection areas. Areas of concern conditions will be developed for all roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits for the 10-year period. Part A, Section 1.3.5.2 provides direction for silvicultural ground rules and conditions on regular operations for harvest, renewal and tending operations.

##### 1.3.5.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern

An area of concern is a defined geographic area associated with an identified value that may be affected by forest management activities. Identified values are known natural, cultural or

1 First Nation or Métis resource attributes or uses of land, including all lakes and streams,  
2 which must be considered in forest management planning. These identified values are  
3 portrayed for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9). An operational prescription for  
4 harvest, renewal, tending, and protection activities or a condition on a road, landing, or  
5 forestry aggregate pit is developed for an area of concern to prevent, minimize or mitigate  
6 adverse effects of forest management operations on the value.

7  
8 Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern may be reserves (i.e.,  
9 prohibition of operations), modified operations (i.e., specific conditions or restrictions on  
10 operations) or regular operations (i.e., in accordance with the SGRs), individually or in  
11 combination. Modified operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing,  
12 equipment), or unique prescriptions that are developed to protect or manage specific  
13 values.

14  
15 The proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will be  
16 documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. All areas of concern will be clearly  
17 identified, and where practical, the proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for  
18 areas of concern will also be portrayed. All operational prescriptions and conditions for areas  
19 of concern information will be cross-referenced in accordance with the FIM, and if  
20 applicable, the supplementary documentation forms (Appendix III).

21  
22 For candidate areas for bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest  
23 areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of  
24 concern from the current approved FMP may be used. The operational prescriptions and  
25 conditions for areas of concern will be documented in accordance with the FIM. The  
26 operational prescriptions and conditions will be identified, and where practical portrayed.

27  
28 Planning efforts from current FMPs should be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised  
29 in the development of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.  
30 Operational prescriptions and conditions will be developed for individual areas of concern,  
31 or groups of areas of concern with a common value(s), using the forest management guides  
32 identified by MNRF as applicable to the management unit. An operational prescription or  
33 condition for an area of concern may also be proposed from another planning exercise for  
34 inclusion in the FMP. In some situations, the planning team will develop an operational  
35 prescription or condition for an area of concern.

#### 36 37 38 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions from a Forest Management Guide

39  
40 If a forest management guide provides specific direction or recommendations (standards or  
41 guidelines) as to the appropriate prescription or condition to be used for a particular value,  
42 the specific direction or recommendations (standards or guidelines) will be the operational  
43 prescription or condition. Documentation of the operational prescription or condition, and

1 the applicable section of the forest management guide, will be provided in the FMP in  
2 accordance with the FIM and no supplementary documentation is required.

3  
4 If a change from the specific direction or recommendations in a forest management guide is  
5 desired, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition, in  
6 accordance with the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions developed  
7 by the planning team. In such situations, operational prescriptions and condition(s) for  
8 species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of MNRF staff with expertise in species  
9 at risk. In situations where the planning team develops an operational prescription or  
10 condition, the operational prescription or condition will be documented as an exception in  
11 the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The rationale for that exception will be provided in the  
12 supplementary documentation (Part B, Section 4.2.1, Appendix III), and the monitoring  
13 program for the FMP will describe the methods that will be used to determine the  
14 effectiveness of that exception (Part B, Section 4.7.2, Appendix III)).

#### 15 16 17 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions from Other Planning Exercises

18  
19 An operational prescription or condition that directly relates to forest management activities  
20 may have been previously developed for an area of concern through another planning  
21 exercise (e.g., development of a resource stewardship agreement).

22  
23 The proposed operational prescription or condition will be made available for public review.  
24 If the public review supports the proposed operational prescription or condition, no further  
25 planning will be required. The proposed operational prescription or condition, and its  
26 source, will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The consideration of the  
27 comments received from interested and affected persons, organizations and First Nation and  
28 Métis communities at stage three will be documented in the supplementary documentation  
29 (Part B, Section 6.1). The rationale for the operational prescription or condition, will be  
30 documented in the FMP.

31  
32 If the public review at stage three does not support the proposed operational prescription or  
33 condition, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition, in  
34 accordance with the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions developed  
35 by the planning team.

#### 36 37 38 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions Developed by the Planning Team

39  
40 For some value(s), an approved forest management guide may not provide specific direction  
41 or recommendations, no forest management guide may exist, or a proposed operational  
42 prescription or condition may not have been developed in another planning exercise. In  
43 addition, as described in the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions from  
44 a forest management guide, a change from the specific direction or recommendations in a

1 forest management guide (i.e., an exception) may be desired. In these situations, the  
2 planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition.

3  
4 In the development of the operational prescription or condition, there will be consideration  
5 and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions or conditions, and  
6 participation of interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis  
7 communities. For an operational prescription or condition developed for an area of concern  
8 that involves a cultural heritage resource value, tourism or recreational value, there will be  
9 consideration of visual aesthetics, which may include the use of viewscape analysis  
10 techniques, in the development of the operational prescription or condition. Operational  
11 prescriptions and condition(s) for species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of  
12 MNRF staff with expertise in species at risk.

13  
14 The environmental analysis of each alternative operational prescription or condition will  
15 include:

- 16  
17 (a) the identification of the potential environmental effects of specific forest  
18 management operations on the value(s) in the area of concern; and  
19 (b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the alternative  
20 operational prescription or condition in preventing, minimizing or mitigating  
21 those potential effects.

22  
23 The selection of the proposed operational prescription or condition will be based on a  
24 comparison of the environmental analyses of the alternative operational prescriptions or  
25 conditions.

26  
27 The proposed operational prescription or condition will be documented in the FMP in  
28 accordance with the FIM. Documentation of the consideration and environmental analysis of  
29 alternative operational prescriptions or conditions, the participation of interested and  
30 affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities, and the rationale  
31 for the proposed operational prescription or condition will be provided in the supplementary  
32 documentation of the FMP, in the form prescribed in Appendix III.

### 33 34 35 1.3.5.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

36  
37 For harvest, renewal, and tending areas, SGRs will be developed (Part A, Section 1.2.4.4),  
38 conditions on regular operations will be identified, and any requirements for planned  
39 clearcuts will apply.

### Silvicultural Ground Rules

The SGRs will serve as the prescriptions for regular operations within areas of operations for the 10-year period of the FMP, and naturally disturbed areas that are harvested. The SGRs will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, under the direction of the plan author, using the silvicultural guide(s) identified by MNRF as applicable to the management unit. The SGRs will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

For the planned areas of operations for the 10-year period, the applicable SGRs will be identified, portrayed, and cross-referenced to the SGR information in the FMP. For candidate areas of bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the applicable SGRs from the current approved FMP will be identified.

The SGR information represents the best estimate of the site conditions that are likely to be encountered, based on the available information at the time of the planning of operations. At the time of implementation of operations, in the event that the actual site conditions encountered are found to be different than those previously identified in the FMP, other relevant approved alternative silvicultural treatments in the SGRs can be selected (Part D, Section 3.5.2).

The situations where prescribed burns and aerial applications of herbicide may occur will be described in the FMP.

The planning team will identify the planned levels of renewal and tending activities and associated expenditures required to achieve objectives described in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may be planned in two passes. The planning team will describe how area planned to be harvested in two passes will achieve the silvicultural objectives in the LTMD.

### Residual Forest for Planned Clearcuts

As described in Part A, Section 1.2.5.2, areas for harvest operations using the clearcut silvicultural system will be selected using the direction in MNRF's applicable forest management guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales).

For the area planned for harvest using the clearcut silvicultural system, the required area of stand-level residual will be determined, using the direction and standards in MNRF's applicable forest management guide(s). The area of stand-level residual will be identified

1 and portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the direction in the applicable forest  
2 management guide(s).

### 3 4 5 1.3.5.3 Important Ecological Features

#### 6 7 8 Conditions on Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits

9  
10 Conditions applied on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits, to maintain or protect  
11 important ecological features that are not addressed by operational prescriptions or  
12 conditions for areas of concern (e.g., grouse nests) or to implement specific operational  
13 standards and guidelines will be identified. Conditions on roads, landings and aggregate pits  
14 for important ecological features may be identified for the entire management unit or for  
15 specific strategic or operational management zones.

16  
17 Planning efforts from current FMPs will be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised in  
18 the development of conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits. Conditions on  
19 roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits will be developed for important ecological  
20 features using the forest management guides identified by MNRF as applicable to the  
21 management unit. Conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits, will be  
22 documented in the FMP.

23  
24 If no specific policy direction is provided in an approved forest management guide, the  
25 planning team will develop conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits. In  
26 addition, as described in the requirements for conditions on roads, landings and forestry  
27 aggregate pits from a forest management guide, a change from the specific direction or  
28 recommendations in a forest management guide may be desired. In these situations, the  
29 planning team will develop conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits and  
30 the rationale for the change from the specific direction or recommendation will be  
31 documented in the FMP. Conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits for  
32 species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of MNRF staff with expertise in species  
33 at risk.

#### 34 35 36 Conditions on Regular Operations

37  
38 Conditions applied in areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, conducted in  
39 accordance with the SGRs, to maintain or protect important ecological features that are not  
40 addressed by operational prescriptions or conditions for areas of concern (e.g., grouse nests,  
41 wildlife trees) or to implement specific operational standards and guidelines (e.g., rutting)  
42 will be identified. Conditions on regular operations may be identified for the entire  
43 management unit or for specific strategic or operational management zones.



1 Planning efforts from current FMPs should be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised  
2 in the development of conditions on regular operations. Conditions on regular operations  
3 will be developed for important ecological features using the forest management guides  
4 identified by MNRF as applicable to the management unit.

5  
6 Conditions on regular operations, described in MNRF's applicable guide(s) (e.g., guide  
7 relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the  
8 FMP.

9  
10 If no specific policy direction is provided in an approved forest management guide, the  
11 planning team will develop conditions on regular operations. In addition, as described in the  
12 requirements for conditions on regular operations from a forest management guide, a  
13 change from the specific direction or recommendations in a forest management guide may  
14 be desired. In these situations, the planning team will develop conditions on regular  
15 operations and the rationale for the change from the specific direction or recommendation  
16 will be documented in the FMP. Conditions on regular operations for species at risk must be  
17 prepared with the assistance of MNRF staff with expertise in species at risk.

#### 18 19 20 1.3.6 Roads

21  
22 The planning requirements for new primary, branch, and operational roads that are required  
23 to access harvest areas, including contingency areas, that are planned to be constructed  
24 during the 10-year period of the FMP, are described in this section. Planning requirements  
25 for new primary and branch road crossings of areas of concern within the corridors, and new  
26 operational roads within operational road boundaries, for the ten-year period, including any  
27 contingency areas are also described. Planning requirements for existing roads are also  
28 described. The planning of roads will be completed by a registered professional forester.

29  
30 The water crossing standards to be implemented, as described in the Ministry of Natural  
31 Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval  
32 of Forestry Water Crossings, will be documented in the FMP. The planning of water crossings  
33 will be conducted in accordance with Part D, Section 3.2.3.1.

34  
35 For candidate areas for bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1), the road corridor  
36 planning and planning of operational roads from the current approved FMP will apply. Each  
37 proposed new primary, branch and operational road and associated use management  
38 strategy will be identified and portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

##### 39 40 41 1.3.6.1 Primary Road Corridors

42  
43 Based on the environmental analysis of alternative corridors and public comments at stage  
44 two, the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary road required for the

20-year horizon and the associated use management strategy will be finalized. The rationale for the proposed corridor and the associated use management strategy will be documented. If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the restriction will be provided. The format for the documentation is prescribed in Appendix II.

Based on the public comments at stage two, any changes to the use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7) for a confirmed primary road corridor from a previous FMP will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Documentation of the rationale for the revised use management strategy for the road will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix II.

Each planned new primary road will be identified, and the use management strategy for the road will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The planned corridor for each primary road will be portrayed. The portion of the corridor within which a road will be constructed during the 10-year period of the FMP will be identified.

#### 1.3.6.2 Branch Road Corridors

Branch roads are roads, other than primary roads, that branch off existing or new primary or other branch roads, providing access to and through areas of operations on a management unit. Whenever a new road, other than a primary or operational road, is required to provide access to, through, or between, separate areas of operations, the road will be classified as a branch road.

The planning requirements in this section will apply to any corridors for new branch roads which are required for forest management purposes for the 10-year period of the FMP, including extensions to existing branch roads.

For each new branch road, a one kilometre wide corridor will be identified, based on consideration of:

- (a) the degree to which the physical conditions, identified values and significant engineering or safety factors in the area, act as constraints or provide opportunities, including possibilities for development of other resources;
- (b) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, statements of conservation interest, park management plans, lake management plans, resource stewardship agreements); and
- (c) the results of consultation with known affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities.

The consideration of items (a) to (c) will provide the rationale for the proposed corridor for each new branch road. Each proposed new branch road will be identified in the FMP in

1 accordance with the FIM. For each new branch road, a use management strategy will also be  
2 developed, in accordance with the requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.7.  
3 Rationale for the proposed corridor, and associated use management strategy for the road,  
4 will be documented in the FMP. The road use management strategy will be recorded in the  
5 FMP in accordance with the FIM.

6  
7 A common rationale may apply to the proposed corridors for a number of new branch roads.  
8 A common use management strategy may also apply to a number of new branch roads

9  
10 The proposed corridor for each new branch road for the 10-year period will be portrayed.

### 11 12 13 1.3.6.3 Area of Concern Crossings – Primary and Branch Roads

14  
15 The planning requirements in this section will apply to each crossing of an area of concern by  
16 a proposed corridor for a new primary or branch road. In the preparation of the FMP, these  
17 crossings will be planned for the portion of the road that will be constructed during the 10-  
18 year period.

19  
20 For each crossing of an area of concern, there will be a determination and documentation of:

- 21  
22 (a) locations within an area of concern where a road may be constructed; and  
23 (b) conditions on the construction of the crossing (e.g., crossing structure,  
24 construction methods, mitigative measures).

25  
26 The determination of locations within an area of concern where a road may be constructed,  
27 and construction conditions, will involve consideration and documentation of:

- 28  
29 (a) identified values;  
30 (b) applicable MNRF guide(s);  
31 (c) the results of discussions with known affected persons, organizations, and  
32 First Nation and Métis communities; and  
33 (d) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

34  
35 For each new primary and branch road water crossing to be constructed, the location,  
36 crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable AWS  
37 (Part D, Section 3.2.3) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and  
38 Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry  
39 Water Crossings.

40  
41 For each new primary and branch road crossing of an area of concern in a proposed corridor  
42 the conditions on construction within an area of concern will be identified and where  
43 practical, portrayed. The conditions on new primary or branch road construction within an  
44 area of concern will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Conditions on a

1 landing within an area of concern will also be documented in the FMP in accordance with  
2 the FIM.

3  
4 If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by a  
5 primary road, the receipt of comments will be noted in the FMP in accordance with the FIM  
6 and documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix II, Part D).

7  
8 If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by a  
9 branch road, the receipt of comments will be noted in the FMP in accordance with the FIM  
10 and documented in the summary of public consultation in the supplementary  
11 documentation (Part B, Section 6.1).

12  
13 Where a new primary road, branch road, or landing does not intersect an area of concern for  
14 a value, or an important ecological feature, any conditions on the primary road, branch road,  
15 or landing as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at  
16 the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

17  
18 If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes must traverse a  
19 provincial park or conservation reserve, the PPCRA and applicable policy will apply. The  
20 requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation  
21 Reserves will also apply.

#### 22 23 24 1.3.6.4 Operational Roads

25  
26 Operational roads are roads within operational road boundaries, other than primary or  
27 branch roads, that provide short-term access for harvest, renewal and tending operations.  
28 Operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest  
29 management purposes, and are often decommissioned.

30  
31 The planning requirements in this section will apply to:

- 32  
33 (a) identification of operational road boundaries, within which new operational  
34 roads may be constructed;  
35 (b) conditions on new operational road crossings of areas of concern; and  
36 (c) the development of a use management strategy for the new operational  
37 roads or network of operational roads within each operational road  
38 boundary.

39  
40 The areas within which new operational roads are to be constructed for the 10-year period  
41 will be identified by operational road boundaries. An operational road boundary may include  
42 planned areas of operations, and the area from an existing road or planned road corridor to  
43 the planned areas of operations within which an operational road is planned to be  
44 constructed. Operational road boundaries are intended to identify where operational roads

1 may be constructed, and should provide flexibility in operational road location where  
2 necessary (e.g., terrain limitations). Operational road boundaries will be identified and  
3 portrayed.

5 For new operational road crossings of areas of concern, conditions on the construction of  
6 the crossings will be identified for individual areas of concern or groups of areas of concern.  
7 The determination of the conditions will involve consideration and documentation of:

- 9 (a) identified values;
- 10 (b) applicable MNRF guide(s);
- 11 (c) the results of consultation with known affected persons, organizations, and  
12 First Nation and Métis communities; and
- 13 (d) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

15 Conditions may include: no road construction permitted, specified water crossing structures  
16 and methods of construction; timing restrictions on crossing construction; marking or  
17 flagging of crossing locations prior to construction; and notification to directly affected  
18 persons and First Nation and Métis communities in advance of crossing construction.  
19 The conditions on construction of new operational road crossings of areas of concern or  
20 landings within an area of concern will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the  
21 FIM, and where practical, portrayed. If public comments have been received concerning a  
22 crossing of an area of concern by an operational road, the receipt of comments will be noted  
23 in the FMP in accordance with the FIM and documented in the summary of public  
24 consultation in the supplementary documentation (Part B, Section 6.1).

26 For each new operational road water crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing  
27 structure and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable AWS (Part D,  
28 Section 3.2.3) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries  
29 and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

31 Where a new operational road or landing does not intersect an area of concern or an  
32 important ecological feature, any conditions on the operational road or landing, as described  
33 in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site  
34 scales), will be documented in the FMP.

36 If a new operational road required for forest management purposes must traverse a  
37 provincial park or conservation reserve, the PPCRA and applicable policy will apply. The  
38 requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation  
39 Reserves will also apply.

41 Use management strategies will be developed for new operational roads or networks of  
42 operational roads within operational road boundaries (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7) and  
43 documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. A common use management strategy  
44 may apply to multiple new operational roads or networks of operational roads.

### 1.3.6.5 Existing Roads

Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee as described in Part A<sup>1</sup>, Section 1.1.8.10, and other existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF<sup>2</sup>, will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The associated use management strategy for each existing road or road network will also be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Each existing road or road network documented in the FMP will be portrayed.

If a use management strategy does not exist for an existing road or road network, or an existing use management strategy will be changed, the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.7 will apply. Each proposed or changed use management strategy will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

If an existing road required for forest management purposes traverses a provincial park or conservation reserve, the PPCRA and applicable policy will apply. The additional requirements of the PPCRA will not apply in the recreation/utilization zone of Algonquin Park. The requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves will also apply.

### Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and the road and/or landing intersects an area of concern or an important ecological feature, the appropriate conditions on the road and/or landing, as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM, and where practical, portrayed.

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and where the road and/or landing does not intersect an area of concern or an important ecological feature, any conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

---

<sup>1</sup> This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990,c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.

<sup>2</sup> Roads under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF are those roads that fall within the definition of "road" under s.48 of the PLA. MNRF does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act*, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50

### 1.3.6.6 Forestry Aggregate Pits

Under Section 8 of Ontario Regulation 244/97 made under the *Aggregate Resources Act*, a person who operates a pit while conducting forest operations on Crown land on behalf of the Crown or under the authority of a forest resource license and in accordance with a FMP approved under the CFSA is exempt from subsection 34(1) of that Act, as amended from time to time (i.e., the requirement for an aggregate permit to operate a pit). The following criteria will apply to a forestry aggregate pit:

- (a) the aggregate is required for a forest access road in a management unit;
- (b) aggregate is extracted:
  - (i) no closer than 1.5 metres above the established groundwater table; or
  - (ii) closer than 1.5 metres above the established groundwater table if:
    - the proposed site is remote or isolated; and
    - the excavation limit of the site is not within:
      - 500 metres of a coldwater stream;
      - 1000 metres of a waterwell, whether dug or drilled; and
      - 5000 metres of a receptor (e.g., residences or facilities where people sleep {nursing homes, hospitals, trailer parks, camping grounds}; schools; day-care centres).
- (c) the pit is established within:
  - (i) an approved new primary or branch road corridor in the FMP, and identified in the AWS;
  - (ii) an approved area of operations in the FMP, and identified in the AWS;
  - (iii) an approved operational road boundary in the FMP, and identified in the AWS; or
  - (iv) an approved aggregate extraction area in the FMP, and identified in the AWS located within 500 metres of an existing forest access road.

Aggregate pits that satisfy these criteria are hereafter referred to as “forestry aggregate pits”.

#### Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits

Forestry aggregate pits will be operated in accordance with the operational standards specified in the approved FMP and set out in Appendix IV.

Operational standards for forestry aggregate pits as set out in Appendix IV will be documented in the FMP.

1  
2 Aggregate Extraction Areas  
3

4 Aggregate extraction areas identify known sites of aggregate where a forestry aggregate pit  
5 is planned to be established. Aggregate extraction areas will be within 500 metres of an  
6 existing forest access road that is outside:

- 7  
8 (a) an approved area of operations;  
9 (b) an operational road boundary;  
10 (c) a primary road corridor; or  
11 (d) a branch road corridor.  
12

13 Aggregate extraction areas will be identified for the period of the FMP.  
14  
15

16 Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits  
17

18 The appropriate conditions on operations for forestry aggregate pits, as described in MNRF's  
19 guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be  
20 documented in the FMP.  
21

22 If a forestry aggregate pit intersects an area of concern or an important ecological feature,  
23 the appropriate conditions, as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to  
24 conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in accordance with  
25 the FIM. Where practical, the conditions will be portrayed.  
26

27 If an existing forestry aggregate pit is planned to be used for forest management purposes  
28 during the period of the FMP, and where the forestry aggregate pit does not intersect an  
29 area of concern or an important ecological feature, any conditions on the forestry aggregate  
30 pit as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the  
31 stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.  
32  
33

34 1.3.6.7 Use Management Strategies  
35

36 For each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest  
37 licensee as described in Part A<sup>3</sup>, Section 1.1.8.10, and other existing roads that will be used

---

<sup>3</sup> This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O. 1990, c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.



for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF<sup>4</sup>, a use management strategy is required. A use management strategy includes:

- (a) maintenance provisions;
- (b) monitoring provisions;
- (c) access provisions or restrictions which apply to the public and commercial resource users, with the rationale for the restrictions;
- (d) a statement if the intent of the sustainable forest licensee is to transfer the responsibility for the road or road network to MNRF in the next 20 years, and the operating year in which the transfer is intended to occur;
- (e) a statement that where routine road maintenance is not expected to occur for the next five years, notification will be provided to the MNRF;
- (f) where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer responsibility beyond the period of the FMP, MNRF will provide a preliminary indication for the management intent for the road or road network;
- (g) where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer responsibility within the plan period, MNRF will provide the management intent for the road or road network; and
- (h) where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer responsibility within the plan period and MNRF's management intent is to not maintain the road for public use, the activities required prior to transfer, including potential removal of water crossings will be documented (e.g., decommissioning, signs).

Road use management strategies must be informed by direction described in MNRF's guides (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales).

For each new or existing road or road network, the use management strategy will be described in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. If a change is proposed to the future use management for an existing road, the road will be identified and portrayed.

If the responsibility of a road is to be transferred during the implementation of the FMP, an amendment to the FMP will be required (Part C, Section 2.0).

#### 1.3.6.8 Wood Storage Yards

Wood storage yards are sites that are geographically separated from the harvest location that may be used for slashing, sorting, storage and other wood measurement activities of

---

<sup>4</sup> Roads under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF are those roads that fall within the definition of "road" under s.48 of the PLA. MNRF does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50*

forest resources prior to the movement to final processing destination(s) (e.g., previous harvest blocks, forestry aggregate pits, existing or new wood storage yards). Wood storage yards will not inhibit public access within the management unit.

The FMP will identify the type and duration of the wood storage yard. Wood storage yards will be portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

Wood storage yards must be operated in accordance with the operational standards set out in Appendix V.

Operational standards for wood storage yards as set out in Appendix V will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

Any changes to the type, or period of use for a wood storage will require an amendment to the FMP in accordance with Part C, Section 2.0.

#### 1.3.7 Confirmation of Draft Proposed Operations

During the planning of operations and development of other operational information of the FMP (e.g., use management strategies, silvicultural ground rules, operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern), the MNRF will provide confirmation to the plan author and planning team that the proposed operations information has been completed in accordance with the requirements of the FMPM. Proposed operations to be confirmed and the associated timelines for confirmation will be identified in the project plan for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2). Proposed operations to be confirmed may include:

- a) preliminary planned harvest and contingency areas for the 10-year period of the FMP;
- b) eligible areas for renewal and tending;
- c) potential areas of bridging operations, if applicable;
- d) potential areas of second-pass harvest operations, if applicable;
- e) operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern required by MNRF's forest management guides;
- f) silvicultural ground rules;
- g) conditions on regular operations and conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits for important ecological features required by MNRF's forest management guides;
- h) primary and branch road corridors;
- i) area of concern crossings for primary and branch roads;
- j) forestry aggregate pits exemption criteria and operating standards;
- k) wood storage yards exemption criteria and operating standards; and
- l) use management strategies for roads or road networks

1  
2 The confirmation of the required information for proposed operations will be provided by  
3 MNRF to support the planning of operations and the preparation of the draft FMP.

4  
5 The confirmation is intended to enable the preparation of the draft FMP to proceed with  
6 some certainty, to reduce MNRF review workload at draft plan, and to minimize alterations  
7 to the draft FMP following public review and First Nation and Métis involvement and  
8 consultation on the draft FMP. However, circumstances may arise which require re-  
9 examination of the proposed operations (e.g., changes to proposed operations due to  
10 results of consultation, identified issues).

#### 11 12 13 1.3.8 Expenditures

14  
15 The projected expenditures required for renewal and maintenance operations, will be  
16 identified. The assumptions and ratios used to estimate expenditures associated with the  
17 implementation of renewal and tending operations will be described. The forecast of  
18 expenditures by activity and funding source will be summarized in the FMP in accordance  
19 with the FIM.

#### 20 21 22 1.3.9 Spatial Assessment

23  
24 If there are significant changes to the areas of operations during operational planning, the  
25 assessment of landscape pattern objectives and indicators will be updated after the planning  
26 of operations has been completed (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).

#### 27 28 29 1.3.10 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction

30  
31 An assessment of the expected effect of proposed types, levels and spatial distribution of  
32 harvest, renewal and tending operations on the achievement of progress towards the LTMD  
33 will be prepared. The assessment will:

- 34  
35 (a) compare the proposed harvest, renewal and tending operations to the  
36 projections in the LTMD;  
37 (b) compare the location of harvest areas to the projections in the LTMD;  
38 (c) compare the stand conditions (e.g., species composition, site class) of the  
39 selected harvest areas to the eligible harvest areas;  
40 (d) examine the effect of the age class distribution and the projected harvest  
41 volume of the selected harvest area, on the achievement of the LTMD; and  
42 (e) examine the effect of the amount of projected unutilized harvest volume on  
43 the achievement of the LTMD.  
44

1 The assessment will be supported by modeling similar to the forest modeling for the  
2 development of the LTMD. The proposed operations for the 10-year period will be  
3 incorporated into the analysis tools for this assessment.

4  
5 If proposed types, levels, and spatial distribution of operations deviate from the projections  
6 in the LTMD, a discussion of the effects on objective achievement and sustainability will be  
7 provided. If there are significant effects on objective achievement and/or sustainability, it  
8 may be necessary to adjust the areas of operations for the 10-year period, and complete the  
9 required planning and assessment of operations.

#### 10 11 12 1.3.11 Determination of Sustainability

13  
14 In the preparation of a FMP, the last step in the determination of sustainability involves  
15 updating the preliminary determination of sustainability (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3), based on  
16 the results of the planning of operations, and concluding that the FMP provides for the  
17 sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management  
18 unit.

19  
20 The assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) will be updated to reflect  
21 changes as a result of the planning of operations, using the updated spatial assessments if  
22 applicable (Part A, Section 1.3.9).

23  
24 The determination of sustainability will consider the collective achievement of objectives  
25 and the comparison of proposed operations to the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.3.10), and will  
26 conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made  
27 towards the desired forest and benefits.

28  
29 The determination of sustainability will consider:

- 30  
31 (a) the collective achievement of objectives;  
32 (b) the spatial assessment;  
33 (c) the social and economic assessment; and  
34 (d) the risk assessment.

35  
36 If the determination of sustainability indicates that the desirable level of an indicator is not  
37 achieved within the plan period, rationale will be required. The rationale will examine  
38 whether there is movement towards the desirable levels, and the timeframe in which the  
39 desirable levels will be achieved.

40  
41 The documentation of the determination of sustainability will:

- 42  
43 (a) describe how the FMP provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on  
44 the management unit, and discuss:

- (i) the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved;
- (ii) the preliminary spatial assessment;
- (iii) the social and economic assessment; and
- (iv) the risk assessment; and
- (b) provide a conclusion that the FMP has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

#### 1.3.12 Proposed Operations Summary

Proposed operation summary information will be portrayed in accordance with the FIM and be made available at stage three.

#### 1.3.13 Stage Three – Review of Proposed Operations

After the requirements in sections 1.3.1 to 1.3.12 have been completed, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.3, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

### **1.4 Preparing for Stage Four – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan**

#### 1.4.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the preparation, submission and MNRF review of the draft FMP. Stage four of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.4) will take place concurrently with the MNRF review of the draft FMP.

#### 1.4.2 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan

Following the public review of planned operations for the 10-year period, the planning team will compile comments that were received from the public. The MNRF will also compile comments that were received from each First Nation and Métis community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the First Nation and Métis community (Part A, Section 3.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 3.5. The planning team will review the comments, consider if changes to the planned operations are required and make the necessary changes. The monitoring and assessment programs will be developed

(Part B, Section 4.7) for forest operations inspections, exceptions monitoring, assessment of regeneration, and monitoring of roads and water crossings, that will be conducted during the period of the FMP. The fire prevention and preparedness measures will be prepared (Part B, Section 4.8) and included in the FMP. The draft FMP will be produced in accordance with the documentation requirements prescribed in Part B of this manual and information requirements prescribed in the FIM.

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the FMP - Title, Certification and Approval Page of the draft FMP in the format prescribed in the FIM. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted FMPs. For those components of the draft FMP that require proficiency beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also sign the title, certification and approval page, in the format prescribed in the FIM. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the plan, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The MNRF does not sign the title, certification and approval page for the draft FMP.

A List of Exceptions will be produced, in the format described in the FIM. The List of Exceptions includes all silvicultural treatments in the SGRs which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guide(s). The List of Exceptions will accompany the FMP - Title, Certification and Approval Page.

Prior to submission of the draft FMP to MNRF, the plan author will ensure that:

- (a) the plan is complete and meets the content requirements of Part B of the FMPM, and information requirements of the FIM;
- (b) all calculations are correct;
- (c) the plan is edited for ease of understanding; and
- (d) the plan contains page numbers and line numbers.

#### 1.4.3 Submission of the Draft Forest Management Plan

The plan author will submit the draft FMP for MNRF review on or before the scheduled date for draft plan submission.

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the draft FMP to the LCC. At the request of the LCC, an electronic copy of the draft FMP, or paper copies of specified sections of the draft plan, will be provided to the LCC for review.

1  
2 1.4.4 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary  
3

4 A draft FMP summary will be prepared. The purpose of the summary is to facilitate public  
5 review of the draft FMP, by having a summary of the plan available for reviewers to keep for  
6 their own use. The content requirements of the FMP summary are prescribed in Part B,  
7 Section 7.0.  
8

9 The summary will be submitted to the MNRF regional resources manager at least 30 days  
10 before the information forum to review the draft FMP (Part A, Section 2.3.3.4). A French  
11 version of the summary will be prepared by MNRF. The plan author will submit the English  
12 and French versions of the draft FMP summary. The draft FMP summary will be available  
13 with the draft FMP that is available for public review.  
14  
15

16 1.4.5 Availability of the Draft Forest Management Plan  
17

18 As described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.4, the draft FMP, and the draft FMP summary, will be  
19 available for public review through the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the  
20 Ontario Government website.  
21

22 As described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.4, interested and affected persons, organizations, and  
23 First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF  
24 office to discuss the draft FMP.  
25

26 The English and French versions of the draft FMP summary will be available for public  
27 distribution, upon request.  
28  
29

30 1.4.6 Stage Four – Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan  
31

32 Concurrent with the 60 day MNRF review of the draft FMP, the planning team will conduct  
33 public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.4, and First  
34 Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the  
35 requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.  
36  
37

38 1.4.7 MNRF Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan  
39

40 The MNRF regional resources manager will confirm that the draft FMP is complete before  
41 the commencement of the concurrent MNRF and public review of the draft FMP.  
42

43 A period of 60 days is provided for MNRF review of the draft FMP. In most situations, MNRF  
44 reviewers will be familiar with the plan, having participated on, or provided advice to, the

1 planning team. Some sections of the plan will have had a preliminary review, or will have  
2 received preliminary MNRF support at a progress checkpoint during the preparation of the  
3 plan (Part A, Section 1.1.6). The MNRF will also have reviewed the LTMD, as part of the  
4 MNRF regional director's preliminary endorsement of the LTMD, prior to the planning of  
5 operations for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.2).

6  
7 The purpose of the MNRF review of the draft FMP is to confirm that the plan meets the  
8 requirements of the FMPM and the FIM. The review will also confirm:

- 9  
10 (a) relevant policies and obligations have been considered;  
11 (b) forest management guides have been properly used and consistently applied;  
12 (c) identified exceptions are acceptable;  
13 (d) planning team decisions and the consideration of public comments are  
14 reflected in the draft FMP; and  
15 (e) the plan is complete, calculations are correct, and that the plan is  
16 understandable by those who must refer to, implement, and monitor the  
17 implementation of the plan.  
18  
19

#### 20 1.4.7.1 MNRF's List of Required Alterations

21  
22 The product of the MNRF review is a draft final list of required alterations, with the reasons  
23 for the required alterations. The list is a compilation of required alterations from MNRF  
24 reviewers, and includes the consideration of comments from the LCC.  
25

26 The MNRF person designated as coordinator in the project plan (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2) will  
27 coordinate and prepare the draft list of required alterations. Plan reviewers will prioritize  
28 their review of the draft FMP and provide comments as early as possible to the coordinator.  
29 The coordinator will provide the plan author with the draft list of required alterations at  
30 specific stages of the review period in accordance with the approved project plan (Part A,  
31 Section 1.1.2.2). The coordinator, with assistance of the plan reviewers and plan author, will  
32 prepare the final draft list of required alterations during the last 20 days of the period for the  
33 review of the draft FMP.  
34

35 Following the public review of the draft FMP the plan author and the MNRF will compile  
36 comments that were received from the public. The MNRF will also compile comments that  
37 were received from each First Nation and Métis community, through the agreed upon  
38 consultation approach with the First Nation and Métis community (Part A, Section 3.4), or  
39 the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 3.5.  
40

41 Normally, within 5 days of the completion of the public review of the draft FMP, the plan  
42 author and planning team will review the comments from the public and First Nation and  
43 Métis communities, and determine if any changes or additions are required to the draft final  
44 list of required alterations. The list will now become the final list of required alterations. If



the plan author and planning team cannot decide on whether to incorporate comments from the public and First Nation and Métis communities in the final list of required alterations, the MNRF district manager will decide. An issue resolution decision (Part A, Section 2.4.1) made during the public review of the draft FMP will be reflected in the final list of required alterations. Required alterations relating to the manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an MNRF registered professional forester.

Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will provide the final list of required alterations to:

- (a) the sustainable forest licensee;
- (b) the plan author;
- (c) First Nation and Métis communities; and
- (d) the LCC.

Under the authority of the MNRF district manager, MNRF will provide a written response to describe actions (if any) taken to address changes requested to the LTMD or proposed operations during the public review of the draft FMP to:

- (a) any person who has requested a change to the draft plan; and
- (b) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed.

The final list of required alterations or written response provided will be accompanied by a notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the FMP by the MNRF regional director, in accordance with Steps 5 to 7 of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1.

## **1.5 Preparing for Stage Five – Revision and Approval of the Forest Management Plan**

### **1.5.1 Introduction**

This section describes the requirements for the revision of the draft FMP, and MNRF review and approval of the FMP, in preparation for stage five of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.5).

During the concurrent MNRF and public review of the draft FMP, the plan author may discuss the draft final list of required alterations with MNRF reviewers to determine how required alterations will be addressed in the revision of the FMP.

### **1.5.2 Preparation of the Forest Management Plan and Forest Management Plan Summary**

The FMP will be revised within a period of approximately 30 days based on the final list of required alterations. The plan author will prepare documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the FMP to facilitate the MNRF review. A list of major changes to the draft FMP will be prepared and will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the FMP to the LCC. After that presentation, the LCC will provide a brief statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the FMP. The statement will be provided to the MNRF district manager for inclusion with the approved FMP that is available for public inspection.

If requested by the MNRF regional director, prior to submission of the FMP to MNRF for review and approval, the plan author and representatives of the planning team, including the representative of the LCC, will make a presentation of the FMP to the MNRF regional director. The MNRF district manager, MNRF regional resources manager, and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee may attend the presentation.

The draft FMP summary will be updated to reflect the revisions to the FMP. A French version of the summary will be prepared. The plan author will submit the English and French versions of the FMP summary. The FMP summary will be available with the MNRF-approved FMP that is available for public inspection.

### **1.5.3 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan**

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page of the FMP, in the format prescribed in the FIM. For those

1 components of the revised FMP that require proficiency beyond the expertise of the plan  
2 author, the person responsible for those components will also complete and sign the title,  
3 certification and approval page, in the format prescribed in the FIM. If a sustainable forest  
4 licensee has prepared the plan, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also  
5 sign the title, certification and approval page.

6  
7 The plan author will submit the revised FMP for MNRF review. The plan author will also  
8 submit documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed  
9 in the revised FMP, to facilitate the MNRF review. A period of approximately 15 days is  
10 provided for MNRF review and approval of the FMP.

11  
12 After the required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNRF regional  
13 resources manager, the MNRF district manager and MNRF regional resources manager will  
14 sign the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page in the format  
15 prescribed in the FIM, and recommend the FMP for approval by the MNRF regional director.  
16 The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically  
17 submitted FMPs.

18  
19 The MNRF district manager's and MNRF regional resources manager's signatures on the title,  
20 certification and approval page certifies that:

- 21  
22 (a) the FMP has been prepared in accordance with the FMPM and the FIM and  
23 relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF agreements  
24 with First Nation and Métis peoples); and has been prepared using the  
25 applicable forest management guides;  
26 (b) all silvicultural treatments in the SGRs which are exceptions to the  
27 recommendations in the silvicultural guide(s) have been identified; and  
28 (c) all operational prescriptions or conditions for areas of concern which are  
29 exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations in the applicable  
30 forest management guides have been identified.

31  
32 If the MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF district manager's and MNRF regional  
33 resources manager's recommendations, the MNRF regional director will approve the FMP.  
34 The approval of the FMP by the MNRF regional director confirms that the FMP provides for  
35 the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.

#### 36 37 38 1.5.4 Distribution of the MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan

39  
40 As described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.5, the MNRF-approved FMP, and the FMP summary will  
41 be available for inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario  
42 Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and  
43 Métis communities can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss  
44 the approved FMP.

1  
2 The English and French versions of the FMP summary will be available for public distribution,  
3 upon request.

4  
5  
6 **1.5.5 Stage Five – Inspection of the MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan**

7  
8 After the requirements in Sections 1.5.1 to 1.5.4 have been completed, the planning team  
9 will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section  
10 2.3.3.5, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance  
11 with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

12  
13  
14 **1.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan**

15  
16 The approved FMP will be available for public viewing for the 10-year period of the FMP at  
17 the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. The  
18 English and French versions of the approved FMP summary will also be available. Interested  
19 and affected persons, organizations, First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an  
20 appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved FMP.

## **2.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION**

### **2.1 Introduction**

The FMP will be prepared in an open consultative fashion. A LCC will assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team in the preparation of the FMP (Part A, Section 2.2).

Opportunities for ongoing participation in the preparation of the FMP by interested and affected persons, organizations, First Nation and Métis communities (Part A, Section 3.0), and the general public of Ontario are provided through a formal public consultation process (Part A, Section 2.3). As described in Part A, Section 1.0, five formal public consultation opportunities will be provided during the preparation and approval of the FMP. In addition, members of the public are encouraged to consult directly with representatives from the planning team and the LCC during the preparation of the FMP.

A formal process is provided for the resolution of issues that may arise during the preparation of the FMP (Part A, Section 2.4.1).

### **2.2 Local Citizens' Committee**

#### **2.2.1 Introduction**

A LCC, comprised of local citizens representing a range and balance of interests, will be established by the MNRF district manager, in accordance with the requirements of the CFSA, for the applicable MNRF district or management unit. The LCC will assist the plan author, the interdisciplinary planning team and MNRF in the preparation and implementation of the FMP.

#### **2.2.2 Purpose**

The LCC will participate as an integral part of the preparation and implementation of the FMP by:

- (a) nominating a representative of the committee to serve as a member of the planning team, if desired by the committee. Other committee members may attend planning team meetings as observers;
- (b) attending joint meetings with the planning team, to be held at agreed-upon stages of the planning process;
- (c) ensuring that all local interests are effectively communicated to all others involved in forest management planning;
- (d) increasing the effectiveness of the public consultation process by:

- (i) participating in the public consultation process;
- (ii) providing advice to the planning team on the content and presentation of information at information forums;
- (iii) having representatives attend and participate at information forums; and
- (iv) providing advice on any additional public consultation opportunities that would be useful in the context of local circumstances and needs;
- (e) participating in a meeting with the planning team to discuss the desired forest and benefits;
- (f) participating in the development, identification and description of management objectives, strategies, problems and issues;
- (g) participating in the development of values information products;
- (h) promoting integration of all interests by participating in the evaluation of trade-offs which must be made during the planning process, and the resolution of problems, differences and conflicts as early as possible in the planning process;
- (i) providing opportunities to participate in the formal issue resolution process;
- (j) providing advice to the MNRF when discretionary decisions must be made (e.g., categorization of amendments, and issue resolution decisions);
- (k) producing regular reports of the committee's activities;
- (l) assisting in the monitoring of performance of plan implementation;
- (m) participating in the independent forest audit process by having the opportunity:
  - (i) to provide comments on the preparation and implementation of the FMP;
  - (ii) to identify concerns and issues;
  - (iii) to provide a representative to participate in field visits; and
  - (iv) to provide any other relevant information; and
- (n) providing input to the development of district insect pest management programs (Part D, Section 6.0) by having representative(s) of the LCC(s) invited to serve on the interdisciplinary team which produces a district insect pest management program.

### 2.2.3 Membership and Organization

The LCC will be a standing committee with members appointed by the MNRF district manager. Where a management unit crosses MNRF administrative boundaries, the MNRF district manager from the lead district will establish the LCC in consultation with the other MNRF district manager(s).

Normally, there will be a single LCC for a management unit. However, the MNRF district manager may establish additional LCCs or sub-committees, where a management unit encompasses a large geographic area with many communities.

1  
2 The MNRF district manager and the LCC(s) will develop a protocol which describes how  
3 multiple LCCs or sub-committees will function. The protocol will address the roles and inter-  
4 relationships of the multiple committees or sub-committees in public consultation,  
5 development of the LTMD, planning of operations, preparation of local citizen's committee  
6 reports and independent forest audits. In the development of the protocol, identification of  
7 a lead committee will be considered. The protocol will be included in the terms of reference  
8 for the LCC(s) (Part A, Section 2.2.4).

9  
10 The membership of the LCC will include local citizens representing a range and balance of  
11 interests from the communities within or adjacent to the management unit. The majority of  
12 appointments will be drawn from nominations provided by local interest groups. Persons  
13 directly employed by the sustainable forest licensee preparing the FMP are eligible to be  
14 members, but will not make up the majority of the committee.

15  
16 Where they exist at the local level, the main interests represented on the LCC should  
17 include:

- 18  
19 (a) local business;  
20 (b) tourism industry;  
21 (c) anglers and hunters;  
22 (d) First Nation and Métis communities;  
23 (e) forest industry;  
24 (f) naturalists;  
25 (g) municipalities;  
26 (h) trappers and other resource users;  
27 (i) other Crown land recreationalists;  
28 (j) forest industry trade unions;  
29 (k) woodworkers;  
30 (l) small independent loggers;  
31 (m) mineral sector;  
32 (n) waterpower sector;  
33 (o) chamber of commerce member or economic development officer;  
34 (p) local environmental groups;  
35 (q) local heritage groups or organizations;  
36 (r) other interest groups; and  
37 (s) the general public.  
38  
39  
40

#### 2.2.4 Terms of Reference

Terms of reference for the LCC will be reviewed and updated at the beginning of planning for the FMP. For each management unit, the LCC(s) will develop a single terms of reference, with assistance from MNRF. The terms of reference will be available for public distribution, upon request.

The terms of reference will contain:

- (a) the name of each committee member and his/her affiliation;
- (b) the date of each member's appointment to the committee;
- (c) the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and individual committee members, including how each committee member will report back to and/or obtain input from the constituency he or she represents;
- (d) the process for selecting members, the term of service, and a description of how a range and balance of interests will be maintained on the committee;
- (e) key dates for the committee in the preparation of the FMP, (e.g., meetings prior to information forums and submission of draft and final plans, dates for committee reports);
- (f) responsibility for minutes of committee meetings;
- (g) required funding;
- (h) rules, developed by and for the committee, with respect to any procedural matters required to meet its responsibilities in forest management planning and plan implementation, including:
  - (i) how the chair of the committee will be selected;
  - (ii) frequency of, and attendance at, committee meetings;
  - (iii) development of agendas for committee meetings;
  - (iv) involvement in the categorization of amendments;
  - (v) attendance at information forums by committee members;
  - (vi) circulation of information among committee members;
  - (vii) selection of the committee representative who will serve as a member of the planning team;
  - (viii) selection of alternates for the chair of the committee, and for the representative to the planning team;
  - (ix) procedures regarding the declaration of conflicts of interest by individual committee members, and how the committee will address those declarations; and
  - (x) preparation of committee reports; and
- (i) when applicable, a protocol which describes how multiple committees or sub-committees will function (Part A, Section 2.2.3).



### 2.2.5 Administration

The MNRF may reimburse members of the LCC for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses in connection with their participation in the preparation and implementation of the FMP, in accordance with applicable government policies and directives. The MNRF may provide the committee representative who serves as a member of the planning team with a reasonable per diem for attendance at planning team meetings in accordance with applicable government policies and directives.

The MNRF will provide the necessary office support to the committee (e.g., secretarial support and typing of committee reports), to assist the committee in the efficient and effective conduct of its affairs. The MNRF will ensure that training material on the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and forest management planning matters, is available.

The MNRF will provide any available information reasonably required by the committee to the committee. This information will be provided as it becomes available, to ensure achievement of the committee purposes.

### 2.2.6 Reports and Records

During the preparation of the FMP, the LCC will produce reports of its activities. Responsibilities for the preparation of these reports will be set out in the terms of reference for the LCC. In situations where multiple LCCs or sub-committees exist for the management unit, a single committee report will be prepared.

The LCC report for the FMP will include:

- (a) a list of all members of the LCC, and their affiliations, if any;
- (b) the committee's activities during the preparation of the FMP, such as:
  - (i) the number and dates of committee meetings which were held during the planning process;
  - (ii) the number and dates for joint meetings with the planning team;
  - (iii) summary of training opportunities provided for committee members and recommendations for improvements;
  - (iv) participation in the development of the values information products and the LTMD;
  - (v) participation in public consultation efforts (e.g., information forums); and
  - (vi) participation in the issue resolution process;
- (c) a discussion of the problems and issues addressed by the committee;
- (d) an assessment of the cooperation provided to the committee by MNRF and the plan author;

- (e) an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee(s) structure and any recommendations for change; and
- (f) a discussion of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the FMP.

The committee will report on its activities at the following stages of public consultation:

- (a) stage two – a report of committee activities to date;
- (b) stage three – an updated report of committee activities to date;
- (c) stage four:
  - (i) an updated report of committee activities to date, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft FMP; and
  - (ii) a summary of the report, to be included in the draft forest management plan summary; and
- (d) stage five:
  - (i) a final report of committee activities, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the approved FMP; and
  - (ii) a summary of the final report, to be included in the FMP summary.

The reports and all other documentation produced by the committee will be available for public review. The final reports of the committee will form part of the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

#### 2.2.7 Forest Management Plan Documentation

Each FMP and FMP summary will contain a list of all members of the LCC, and their affiliations, if any.

Each FMP will contain a brief statement at the beginning of the plan that reports on the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the plan. This statement will be included in a format prescribed in the FIM. The statement will indicate that the committee's report is included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP. In situations where multiple LCCs or sub-committees exist for the management unit, a single statement that represents the agreement or disagreement of all committees will be prepared.

## 2.3 Public Consultation Requirements

### 2.3.1 Introduction

Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages (Figure A-1). The requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning are described in Part A, Sections 3.4 and 3.5.

### 2.3.2 General Requirements

This section describes general requirements of public consultation. These general requirements address public notices, communications with the planning team and LCC, MNRF's obligations to respond to public comments and submissions, the *French Language Services Act*, 1990 (FLSA), and the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act* 1990 (FIPPA).

#### 2.3.2.1 Public Notices

Public notices will be issued at each stage of public consultation. The timing and contents of each public notice are outlined in Part A, Sections 2.3.3. The information that will be available at each stage of public consultation is also described. Public notices include direct written notices (e.g., letter, email), posted notices (e.g. posted on Natural Resources Information Portal) and media notices (e.g. social media), and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations on MNRF's mailing list. At a minimum, the mailing list will include:

- (a) local and regional offices of relevant government ministries and agencies, and their successors, and in particular:
  - (i) local school boards;
  - (ii) local medical officers of health;
  - (iii) each municipality and planning board, and where appropriate, local services board and Chamber of Commerce;
  - (iv) manager, Operational Services, regional office, Ministry of Transportation;
  - (v) provincial programs engineer, Hydro One;
  - (vi) regional office, MECP;

- (vii) Manager, Heritage Program Unit Ministry of Heritage, Sport, Tourism, and Culture Industries;
- (viii) Manager, Northern Policy and Planning Unit, Ministry of Heritage, Sport, Tourism, and Culture Industries;
- (ix) regional office, Ministry of Energy, Northern Development, and Mines; Department of Indigenous and Northern Affairs (Canada);
- (x) Department of Fisheries and Oceans (Canada) – Central and Arctic Region;
- (xi) Environment Canada – Ontario Region; and
- (xii) Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency – Ontario Region;
- (b) each First Nation and Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the preparation and implementation of the FMP;
- (c) other local Indigenous organizations;
- (d) holders of sustainable forest licenses for management units adjacent to the management unit to which the FMP would apply;
- (e) known local, regional and provincial organizations and associations with an interest in forest management planning for the management unit;
- (f) members of the LCC; and
- (g) individual members of the public with a known interest in forest management planning for the management unit, including those people who may be directly affected by forest management operations during the 10-year period of the FMP, such as private land owners, tourist operators and trappers.

MNRF will make all reasonable efforts to identify individuals who may be directly affected, by means such as direct contact and consulting records of registered trapline areas and mining lands.

As additional interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities are identified, MNRF will update the mailing list.

Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

Each media, posted and direct written notice will contain:

- (a) a portrayal of the management unit;
- (b) a link to the information on the Ontario Government website on how to become involved in forest management planning to provide an explanation of the purpose of the stage of consultation, and its relationship to other stages;
- (c) a description of the information available;
- (d) identification of the forum (e.g., information centre) for consultation, where applicable, including the location(s), date(s) and time(s);

- (e) a request for contributions to the background information;
- (f) a request for comments on material available for review;
- (g) a three part notice of collection that is compliant with the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act*, (1990) (FIPPA) which identifies:
  - (i) personal information is being collected under the authority of Section 68 of the CFSA;
  - (ii) information may be used and shared between MNRF and/or the sustainable forest licensee to contact individuals regarding comments submitted; and
  - (iii) a MNRF contact who can respond to any questions about the collection and use of personal information.
- (h) the names of MNRF, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts and information concerning how to contact.

Additional content requirements of the direct written notice for each stage of public consultation are described in Part A, Sections 2.3.3.

#### Additional Information Forums

The planning team, with advice from the LCC, may choose to hold information forums in addition to the required information forums at stages three and four. If an additional information forum(s) will be held, a public notice will be required, and will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information forum.

#### Supplemental Notices

For each stage of public consultation that involves an information forum, a supplemental notice may be issued approximately seven days in advance to remind the public and First Nation and Métis communities of the information forum.

#### 2.3.2.2 Planning Team and Local Citizens' Committee Communication

The planning team will make reasonable efforts to communicate with interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities to seek their input into the planning process and to facilitate contact between them and the LCC. For example, the planning team will consult with affected trappers and recreationalists to identify recreational trails and trails used for accessing working traplines.

Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange for meetings with representatives of the planning team and the LCC at any time

1 during the planning process. Reasonable opportunities to meet planning team members  
2 during non-business hours will be provided.

### 3 4 5 2.3.2.3 Responses to Comments 6

7 The MNRF, in conjunction with the plan author, will respond in writing if requested, in a  
8 timely way, to written comments and submissions received from any person or organization  
9 during the preparation of a FMP that relate to the LTMD or proposed operations. The MNRF  
10 will respond to form letters received from multiple persons or organizations with a single  
11 response to the person or organization that initiated the letter. The requirement to respond  
12 in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal comments that include a request for a  
13 written response. All responses will explain how the comments and submissions have been  
14 considered. All comments, submissions and responses will be summarized in the public  
15 consultation summary that forms part of the supplementary documentation of the FMP  
16 (Part B, Section 6.1).  
17  
18

### 19 2.3.2.4 French Language Services Act 20

21 The FLSA will govern the French language public consultation requirements for forest  
22 management planning.  
23

24 At a minimum, the following requirements will apply in designated areas under the act:  
25

- 26 (a) all public notices in the English language will include a sentence, in French,  
27 which indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can  
28 be obtained in the French language;
- 29 (b) public notices in the French language are required if there are French  
30 language media; these notices will include a sentence, in English, which  
31 indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can be  
32 obtained in the English language;
- 33 (c) French-speaking staff will be available to assist the French-speaking public at  
34 all information forum or other consultation forums;
- 35 (d) comment forms will be available in the English and French languages; and
- 36 (e) written French language responses will be provided to all written French  
37 language comments and submissions.  
38

39 For all management units:  
40

- 41 (a) the summary of the proposed LTMD available at stages two and three of  
42 public consultation (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.2 and 2.3.3.3) will be available on  
43 the Ontario Government website in the English and French languages; and

- (b) the FMP summary available at stages four and five of public consultation (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.4 and 2.3.3.5) will be available on the Ontario Government website in the English and French languages.

### 2.3.3 Formal Public Consultation

Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages in FMP preparation and approval.

#### 2.3.3.1 Stage One – Invitation to Participate

Stage one of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to participate in the development of the FMP. This notice will be issued after the planning team has completed the necessary preparatory work, to enable the commencement of formal public consultation (Part A, Section 1.1).

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- (a) to advise the public that the preparation of the FMP for the management unit is beginning;
- (b) to provide the public access to information to be used in the forest management planning process;
- (c) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning;
- (d) to request the public's views on the desired forest for the management unit, and desired benefits from the forest which can be achieved through the management of forest cover; and
- (e) to invite members of the public to meet and discuss their interests with the planning team, plan author and LCC.

#### Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- (a) a statement that encourages public involvement as early as possible in the planning process;
- (b) a statement that further information about the forest management planning process, and background information to be used in the preparation of the plan, is available for the period of plan preparation;

- 1 (c) a statement that requests the public to provide additional background  
2 information, or to identify concerns which need to be addressed during the  
3 planning process, to the plan author, the MNRF and/or the LCC; and  
4 (d) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management  
5 planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager  
6 or the MNRF regional director (in accordance with the process described in  
7 Part A, Section 2.4.1).  
8  
9

#### 10 Information Available 11

12 The following information will be available to the public through the appropriate MNRF  
13 office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice is issued:  
14

- 15 (a) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit  
16 (i.e., responsibilities of the sustainable forest licensee, other forest companies  
17 (if any), and MNRF (if any)), and a description of the forest industry which is  
18 supplied from the management unit;  
19 (b) the current values information for the management unit, including the  
20 resource-based tourism values information;  
21 (c) a list of the sources of the values information that will contribute to the  
22 preparation of the FMP;  
23 (d) identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and identification  
24 of those subjects for which data are recognized as being incomplete or  
25 missing;  
26 (e) a request for the public to provide any additional information relating to  
27 important ecological features and values that potentially could be affected by  
28 forest management activities, where such information is not portrayed;  
29 (f) a list of the sources of the information used to update the planning inventory;  
30 (g) a portrayal of the landscape pattern for the current forest condition;  
31 (h) a portrayal of existing roads, and for each road or road network, the  
32 responsibility assignment and existing information on the use management  
33 strategy;  
34 (i) information regarding the historic forest condition for the management unit;  
35 (j) the enhanced management unit annual report for the current FMP and the  
36 final year management unit annual report for the previous FMP;  
37 (k) the current FMP for the management unit;  
38 (l) a list of current audits or reports prepared by or for MNRF pertaining to the  
39 management unit (e.g., independent forest audits) and information on how  
40 the public may access these documents;  
41 (m) audits or reports prepared by or for MNRF pertaining to forest management  
42 generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Reports on Forest Management and  
43 State of the Forest Reports) and information on how the public may access  
44 these documents;



- (n) sources of direction (Part A, Section 1.1.8.1), and information on how the public may access these documents;
- (o) a list of MNRF's forest management guides which are applicable to the management unit, and information on how the public may access these documents;
- (p) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the existing First Nation and Métis Background Information Report for the current approved FMP;
- (q) information on how to get involved in forest management on Crown lands in Ontario; and
- (r) a comment form.

### 2.3.3.2 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

Stage two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice, which invites the public to review the proposed LTMD for the forest. Information will be available for public review and comment through the appropriate MNRF office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee. Members of the planning team will be available to discuss the material.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- (a) for the public to review and comment on:
  - (i) the proposed LTMD for the forest;
  - (ii) the areas which could reasonably be harvested, and the preferred areas for harvest operations, during the 10-year period of the plan;
  - (iii) the analysis of alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years; and
- (b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

### Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- (a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at this stage of public consultation (i.e., the LTMD for the forest);
- (b) a statement that the following information may be obtained through the appropriate MNRF office(s) and the office of the sustainable forest licensee:
  - (i) a summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest; and
  - (ii) a portrayal of:
    - the preferred and optional harvest areas for the 10-year period of the plan; and

- the confirmed primary road corridors and alternative corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;
- (c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 15-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
- (d) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the LCC; and
- (e) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager or the MNRF regional director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1).

### Information Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information which were available at stage one of public consultation, the following information will be available through the appropriate MNRF office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee when the public notice is issued:

- (a) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1);
- (b) a summary of public comments and submissions, which have been received to date, and any responses to those comments and submissions;
- (c) a summary report of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting;
- (d) a summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest (Part A, Section 1.2.7);
- (e) the analysis package;
- (f) information which:
  - (i) summarizes the land types for the management unit and the status of the Crown forest and patent land Crown timber at the beginning of the period of the FMP;
  - (ii) describes forest units for the management unit;
  - (iii) summarizes the managed Crown productive forest by forest unit;
  - (iv) identifies the silvicultural ground rules for the FMP;
  - (v) identifies post-harvest renewal transition rules;
  - (vi) describes the projected forest condition for the Crown productive forest;
  - (vii) describes the projected habitat for selected wildlife species;
  - (viii) describes the projected available harvest area by forest unit;
  - (ix) describes the projected harvest volume by species group and broad size or product group; and
  - (x) summarizes the assessment of objective achievement.

- (g) criteria for use in the identification of areas that could reasonably be harvested during the 10-year period of the plan;
- (h) Information which portrays:
  - (i) the preferred and optional harvest areas for the 10-year period of the plan;
  - (ii) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current FMP and the previous 10 years;
  - (iii) confirmed primary road corridors; and
  - (iv) alternative corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;
- (i) the rationale for the preferred areas for harvest, including a discussion how the applicable MNRF guide(s) were considered;
- (j) the environmental analysis, including use management strategies, of the alternative corridors for each new primary road;
- (k) a request for the public to provide additional information relating to important ecological features and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not portrayed;
- (l) a summary report of the activities of the LCC to date; and
- (m) a comment form.

The summary of the proposed LTMD will also be available for public review on the Ontario Government website during the 15-day public review period. The summary of the proposed LTMD will be available for public distribution, upon request. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the proposed LTMD.

#### 2.3.3.3 Stage Three – Review of Proposed Operations

Stage three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information forum. This information forum will be held as part of the detailed planning of operations for the 10-year period of the FMP. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information forum.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- (a) for the public to review and comment on:
  - (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan;
  - (ii) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the 10-year period of the plan; and
  - (iii) the proposed operational road boundaries for the 10-year period of the plan; and

- (b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

#### Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- (a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at the information forum (i.e., the details of access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period;
- (b) a statement that the following information may be obtained at the information forum:
  - (i) a summary of the MNRF regional director preliminary endorsed LTMD; and
  - (ii) a portrayal of:
    - the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan; and
    - the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads which are required for the 10-year period of the plan;
- (c) a statement that the information at the information forum will also be available for review for a 30-day period after the information forum;
- (d) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
- (e) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the LCC;
- (f) the projected date for draft plan submission; and
- (g) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager or the MNRF regional director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1).

#### Information Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information which were available at stage two of public consultation, the following information will be available at the information forum:

- (a) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1);

- (b) a summary of comments and submissions which have been received to date, and any responses to those comments and submissions;
- (c) the list of required modifications resulting from the public review of the LTMD;
- (d) a summary of the MNRF regional director preliminary endorsed LTMD;
- (e) the proposed SGRs;
- (f) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan; the optional areas for harvest operations; areas of bridging operations (if any); areas of second-pass harvest operations (if any); and the proposed contingency areas;
- (g) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads, and planned operational road boundaries which are required for the 10-year period of the plan;
- (h) for the proposed areas for access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan:
  - (i) the proposed aggregate extraction areas;
  - (ii) the proposed wood storage yards and operational standards;
  - (iii) proposed conditions on the locations and/or construction of primary, branch, and operational road crossings of individual, or groups of, areas of concern;
  - (iv) proposed conditions on forestry aggregate pits and landings within individual, or groups of, areas of concern;
  - (v) proposed conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits outside of areas of concern; and
  - (vi) the proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for individual, or groups of, areas of concern, and where required (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1), the environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions;
- (i) the proposed use management strategies for individual roads or networks of roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee or other existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes;
- (j) information which identifies:
  - (i) operational prescriptions for areas of concern and conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits;
  - (ii) planned harvest area;
  - (iii) planned harvest volume by species;
  - (iv) planned harvest volume and wood utilization;
  - (v) projected wood utilization by mill
  - (vi) contingency harvest area and volume;
  - (vii) planned renewal and tending operations;
  - (viii) road construction and use management
  - (ix) planned expenditures; and
  - (x) planned assessment of establishment;

- (k) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3);
- (l) a portrayal of:
  - (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan;
  - (ii) the optional areas for harvest;
  - (iii) the proposed corridors for primary roads which are required for the next 20 years; and
  - (iv) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the 10-year period of the plan; and
- (m) a comment form.

At the information forum, the summary information will be available for public distribution, upon request. In the material available at the information forum, MNRF will include a request for the public to provide additional information relating to important ecological features and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not portrayed.

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will attend the information forum, and will be appropriately identified.

#### 2.3.3.4 Stage Four – Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

Stage four of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information forum. This information forum will be held concurrently with the MNRF review of the draft FMP. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information forum.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is for the public to review and comment on the draft FMP. Comments from the public will be considered in the finalization of the list of required alterations to the draft FMP.

#### Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- (a) a statement that the draft FMP and draft FMP summary are available for public review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website during the 60-day public review period;
- (b) a statement that the draft FMP summary may be obtained at the information forum;

- (c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
- (d) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the LCC;
- (e) the projected date for MNRF approval of the plan; and
- (f) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager or the MNRF regional director, and identifies the last date to request issue resolution (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1).

#### Information Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information which were available at stage three of public consultation, the following information will be available at the information forum:

- (a) the draft FMP, including the supplementary documentation;
- (b) the draft FMP summary (Part A, Section 1.4.4);
- (c) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the final Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3); and
- (d) a comment form.

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will attend the information forum, and will be appropriately identified.

The information will also be available for public review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website during the 60-day public review period. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the draft FMP.

#### Final List of Required Alterations

As described in Part A, Section 1.4.7.1, after the completion of the concurrent MNRF and public review of the draft FMP, MNRF will consider the comments that were received and produce a final list of required alterations.

Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will provide the final list of required alterations to:

- (a) the sustainable forest licensee;

- (b) the plan author
- (c) First Nation and Métis communities; and
- (d) the LCC.

Under the authority of the MNRF district manager, MNRF will provide a written response to describe actions (if any) taken to address the requested change to:

- (a) any person who has requested a change to the draft plan; and
- (b) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed.

The final list of required alterations or written response provided will be accompanied by a notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the FMP by the MNRF regional director, in accordance with steps 5 to 7 of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1.

#### 2.3.3.5 Stage Five – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan

Stage five of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which advises the public that the MNRF-approved FMP is available for inspection. This notice will be issued upon approval of the FMP by the MNRF regional director.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the FMP has been approved by the MNRF regional director, and to provide an opportunity for the public to inspect the MNRF-approved FMP.

#### Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain a statement that the MNRF-approved FMP and FMP summary are available for inspection for the 10-year duration of the FMP through the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website.

#### Information Available

The following information will be available for public inspection through the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website:

- (a) the MNRF-approved FMP, including the supplementary documentation; and
- (b) the FMP summary (Part A, Section 1.5.2).



### 2.3.3.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan

After public inspection, the approved FMP will be available for public viewing for the 10-year period of the FMP through the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved FMP.

The English and French versions of the FMP summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

## **2.4 Issue Resolution**

### 2.4.1 Issue Resolution Process

There are times when a person(s) may identify a concern with the proposed LTMD or proposed operations in the preparation of a FMP, contingency plan, minor amendment, major amendment, amendment to the LTMD, or an insect pest management program.

When informal discussions do not result in a resolution of the concern, the plan author will advise the concerned person(s) of the opportunity to make a written submission requesting the formal issue resolution process.

Not every concern that arises in the context of preparing the proposed LTMD or proposed operations in the preparation of a FMP, contingency plan, minor amendment, major amendment, amendment to the LTMD, or an insect pest management program, may be subject to the formal issue resolution process. Concerns that are not within the scope of the formal issue resolution process include concerns related to:

- (a) matters outside MNRF's mandate;
- (b) Crown land use planning; or
- (c) matters that would require a legislative or regulatory amendment, or a change in the direction or guidance set out in MNRF manuals, policies or guides.

These types of concerns may be considered by MNRF on an ongoing basis, but will not be addressed through the formal issue resolution process provided for in this manual.

The MNRF district manager and/or regional director will determine if identified issues are within scope of the proposed LTMD or proposed operations in the preparation of a FMP, contingency plan, minor amendment, major amendment, amendment to the LTMD, or an insect pest management program.

1 There may be situations where numerous individuals identify the same issue(s) in their  
2 request for formal issue resolution (e.g., cottage association, municipality). When this  
3 situation occurs, the district manager and/or the regional director may determine that all or  
4 some of the requests be addressed together in an issue resolution meeting(s) and may  
5 specify the time, date and location of such meeting(s). The district manager and/or the  
6 regional director will provide an opportunity for the concerned requestors to nominate a  
7 representative(s) to bring forward the issue(s) on their behalf.

8  
9 During the preparation and review of a FMP for the 10-year period, if a request for issue  
10 resolution is received prior to the draft FMP being available for public review, the request  
11 will progress through two stages, if required, starting with the MNRF district manager, and if  
12 required, the MNRF regional director. If a request is received during the period for public  
13 review of the draft FMP, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution  
14 to the MNRF district manager. If a request is received after the completion of the 60-day  
15 period for public review of the draft FMP, the concerned person(s) will make the request for  
16 issue resolution to the MNRF regional director. The last date to request the issue resolution  
17 process will be 15 days after the completion of the period for public review of the draft FMP.

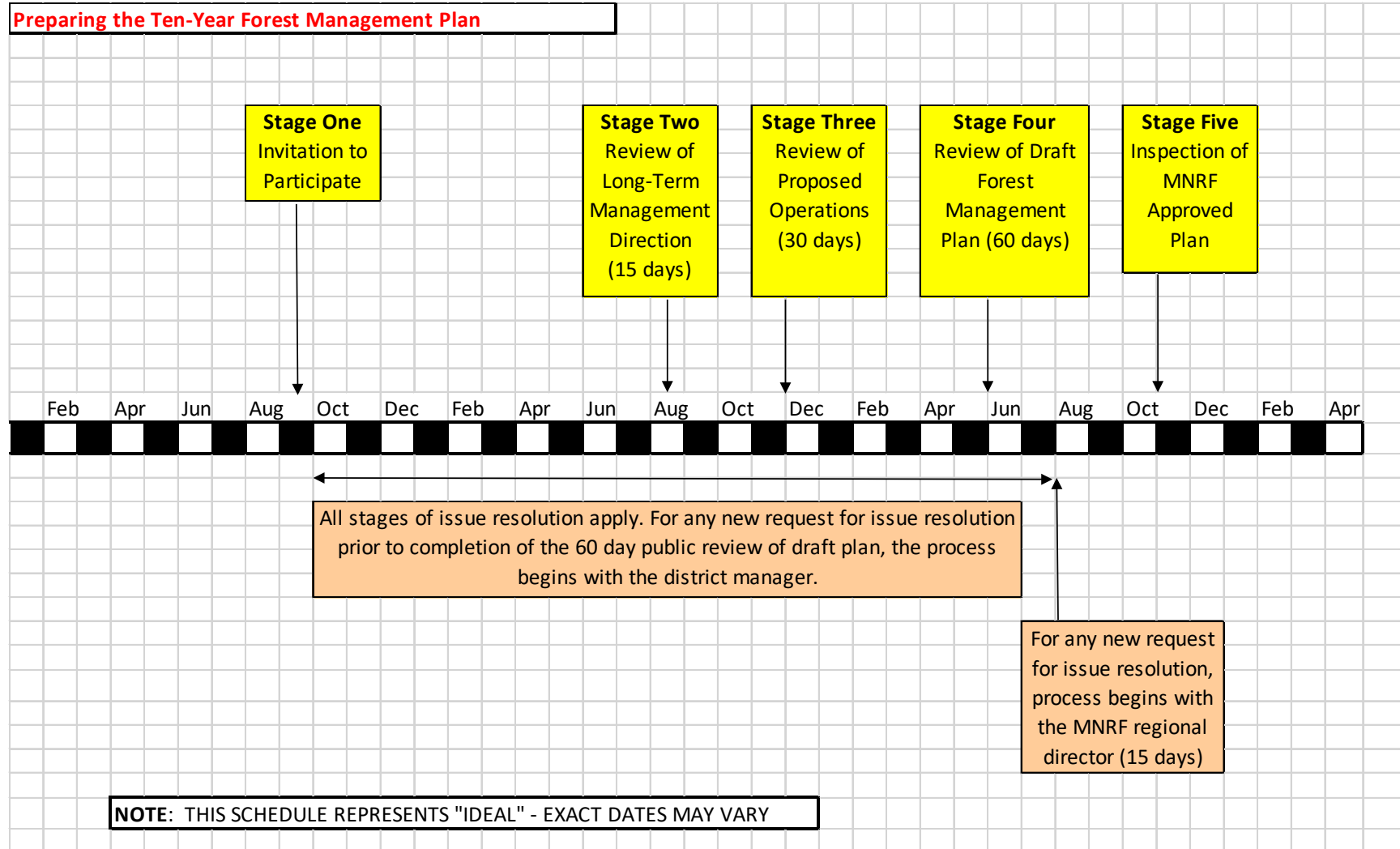
18  
19 Each stage of the formal issue resolution process involves interaction among the concerned  
20 person(s), the plan author, the MNRF district manager and where applicable, the MNRF  
21 regional director, with opportunities for the participation of First Nation and Métis  
22 community representatives on the planning team and the LCC. For each issue, a written  
23 response including rationale will be provided to the concerned person(s) following each  
24 stage of issue resolution. The issue resolution documentation will be summarized and  
25 included in the summary of public consultation of the FMP. If the outcome of issue  
26 resolution influences the location or road use management strategy for a road, or a  
27 prescription or condition for an area of concern, the supplementary documentation for the  
28 road or area of concern will reference the summary of issue resolution that is included in the  
29 summary of public consultation of the FMP. Planning required as a result of the outcome of  
30 issue resolution will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and  
31 documentation requirements of the FMPM and the FIM.

32  
33 Figure A-4 provides an overview of the stages of the issue resolution process.

#### 34 35 36 2.4.1.1 MNRF District Manager Stage

37  
38 The MNRF district manager stage applies to a request received prior to completion of the 60-  
39 day period for public review of the draft FMP.

1 **Figure A-4: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages**



2

1

Step	Process
<b>Step 1</b> Request	The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the MNRF district manager, which includes a description of the issue, the concerned person's involvement in the preparation of the FMP, contingency plan, minor amendment, major amendment, amendment to the LTMD, or an insect pest management program to date (e.g., discussions with the plan author), and preferably, a proposed resolution. To facilitate scheduling of a meeting, the concerned person(s) will also provide dates (within the next 15 days) and locations when he/she would be available for a meeting.
<b>Step 2</b> Meeting	<p>MNRF will contact the concerned person(s) to confirm whether or not the identified issue will be considered, and if required, identify the date and location (e.g., MNRF office, video conference) of the meeting to discuss, and attempt to resolve the issue. MNRF will invite the plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, First Nation and Métis community representatives on the planning team, and one or more members of the LCC. If a meeting is arranged, the MNRF district manager will attend.</p> <p>If a meeting could not be arranged, the MNRF district manager will ask each of the plan author, the concerned person(s), First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, and the LCC to provide their views and recommend a proposed solution, in writing, within a time period specified by the MNRF district manager.</p>
<b>Step 3</b> Issue resolved	If the meeting resulted in a resolution on the issue, the resolution will be documented and included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.
<b>Step 4</b> District Manager Decision	<p>If the meeting did not provide a resolution, or the meeting could not be arranged, the MNRF district manager will provide a written decision, with rationale, to the concerned person(s), First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the LCC and the MNRF regional director, normally within 7 days. Specifically, the district manager's decision will include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a summary of the issue;</li> <li>(b) a summary of the requester's position, involvement in the preparation of the FMP, contingency plan, minor amendment, major amendment, amendment to the LTMD, or an insect pest management program; and</li> <li>(c) the district manager's decision with rationale.</li> </ul>

	The MNRF district manager’s written decision will indicate that there is an opportunity for the concerned person(s) to request a review of his/her decision by the MNRF regional director within 15 days (the actual date will be stated in the letter).
--	--

2.4.1.2 MNRF Regional Director Stage

The MNRF regional director stage applies when:

- (a) a concerned person(s) requests a review of the district manager’s decision;  
or
- (b) a new request is received during the 15 days following the completion of the 60-day period for public review of the draft FMP.

1

Step	Process
<b>Step 5</b> Request	<p>The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the MNRF regional director, which includes a description of the issue, their involvement in the preparation of the FMP, contingency plan, minor amendment, major amendment, amendment to the LTMD, or an insect pest management program to date (e.g., discussions with the plan author, district manager issue resolution), to date, and preferably, a proposed solution.</p> <p>To facilitate the scheduling of a meeting, the concerned person(s) will also provide dates (within the next 15 days) and locations when he/she would be available for a meeting.</p> <p>If the concern is being brought directly to the MNRF regional director without first being considered by the MNRF district manager, the MNRF regional director will determine whether the identified concern will be reviewed.</p> <p>If the request is to review the MNRF district manager's decision the concerned person(s) will be required to provide rationale and any new information related to the concern.</p> <p>MNRF will contact the concerned person(s) to confirm whether or not the identified issue will be reviewed, and if required the date and location (e.g., MNRF office, video conference) of the meeting to discuss, and attempt to resolve the issue.</p> <p>Other persons known to be directly affected by the issue will be notified by MNRF that a formal review of a specific decision in the draft FMP has been requested.</p>
<b>Step 6</b> Meeting	<p>Normally within 7 days of receipt of the request for issue resolution, the MNRF will arrange a meeting of the MNRF regional director, plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, and one or more members of the LCC, to seek resolution of the issue. If a meeting could not be arranged, the MNRF regional director will ask each of the MNRF district manager, the plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, and the LCC, to provide their views and recommend a proposed solution, in writing, within a time period specified by the MNRF regional director.</p>

<b>Step 7</b> Regional Director Decision	The MNRF regional director will consider the results of the meeting and/or the written submissions, if applicable, the decision from the district manager, and produce a written decision on the issue, with rationale, normally within 7 days of the meeting. The MNRF regional director will provide a copy of the written decision, with rationale, to the concerned person(s), First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the LCC, and the MNRF district manager.
---	--

1

2

## **3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING**

### **3.1 Introduction**

This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation and Métis communities in forest management planning. This section also describes the opportunity to develop customized consultation approaches for First Nation and Métis communities and the consultation requirements if a customized consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the First Nation and Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through consultation with First Nation and Métis communities in forest management planning is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate accommodate.

Additional requirements regarding the involvement of First Nations in forest management planning for specific (e.g., Whitefeather forest) management units are described in Part F of this FMPM.

#### **3.1.1 First Nation and Métis communities**

For the purposes of this manual:

- A First Nation community means a First Nation community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with this section of the manual.
- A Métis community means a Métis community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with this section of the manual.
- Traditional uses may include established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights.

For each community that Ontario understands as having established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights and is located in Ontario, the MNR district manager will consider the following criteria when determining whether the community is a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to a management unit:



- 1 (a) whether the community's established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or  
2 treaty rights may be adversely impacted by forest activities, governed by this  
3 manual, in the management unit.
- 4 (b) whether the community has traditional uses that may be affected by forest  
5 activities, governed by this manual, in the management unit.
- 6 (c) whether the community has a local governance body or reserve in or near  
7 the management unit.
- 8 (d) whether the community has expressed interest in forest management  
9 planning or forest operations specific to the management unit.

10  
11 The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community at least nine  
12 months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for the  
13 preparation of the forest management plan to inform the community of the opportunities  
14 to be involved in the preparation and implementation of the FMP, including the opportunity  
15 to develop a customized consultation approach (Part A, Section 3.4). This communication  
16 will specify that the customized consultation approach can include some or all of the  
17 elements listed in Part A, Section 3.4 and that the consultation process set out in Part A,  
18 Section 3.5 of the FMPM will apply if a customized consultation approach is not agreed  
19 upon.

20  
21 This communication will be repeated, for those communities that did not respond to the  
22 initial communication, at least six months prior to the commencement of the formal public  
23 consultation process. At least one month prior to the commencement of the formal  
24 consultation process, the MNRF district manager will contact those communities that did  
25 not respond to either communication to confirm that the consultation process set out in  
26 Part A, Section 3.5 of the FMPM will apply.

27  
28 For a community that is not determined to be a First Nation or Métis community in or  
29 adjacent to the management unit, MNRF may consult with the community through a  
30 process that is not governed by the FMPM.

### 31 32 33 **3.2 Planning Team**

34  
35 When appointing members to the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2), the MNRF district  
36 manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to offer an opportunity for a  
37 representative of the community to participate on the planning team. If a First Nation or  
38 Métis community chooses to participate on the planning team, the representative will be  
39 identified by the community's leadership.

40  
41 In their role as members of the planning team, First Nation and Métis community  
42 representatives are expected to share information about the planning process with their  
43 communities and to represent their communities on the planning team.

44

1 The MNRF may reimburse the First Nation or Métis member(s) of the planning team for  
2 reasonable out-of-pocket expenses, and may provide a reasonable per diem for attendance  
3 at planning team meetings, in accordance with applicable government policies and  
4 directives.

5  
6 If a First Nation or Métis community chooses not to participate on the planning team, and a  
7 customized consultation approach is developed for the community in accordance with the  
8 requirements of Part A, Section 3.4, the approach may describe how the community will  
9 interact with the planning team.

### 10 11 12 **3.3 Local Citizens' Committee**

13  
14 When reviewing the membership of the LCC (Part A, Section 1.1.3), the MNRF district  
15 manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to offer the opportunity for a  
16 representative of the community to participate on the LCC. If a First Nation or Métis  
17 community chooses to participate on the LCC, the representative will be identified by the  
18 community leadership.

19  
20 In their role as member(s) of the LCC, First Nation and Métis community representatives are  
21 expected to share information about the planning process with their communities and to  
22 represent their communities on the LCC.

### 23 24 25 **3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management** 26 **Planning**

27  
28 A customized consultation approach will provide for the involvement of the First Nation or  
29 Métis community in the preparation and implementation of the FMP.

30  
31 If, in response to the MNRF district manager's communications prior to the commencement  
32 of the formal public consultation process, a First Nation or Métis community expresses an  
33 interest in developing a customized consultation approach, representatives of the  
34 community, MNRF, and the plan author will work together to develop the approach. In the  
35 development of the approach, the First Nation or Métis community may choose to co-  
36 ordinate efforts with other First Nation or Métis communities, or seek advice from an  
37 Indigenous organization. An existing customized consultation approach may be considered  
38 in the development of the approach. Where MNRF and the First Nation or Métis community  
39 have entered into an existing consultation agreement or protocol outside of the forest  
40 management planning process, the customized consultation approach will reflect the  
41 agreement or protocol, where applicable. The First Nation or Métis community and MNRF  
42 need to agree to the approach, otherwise the consultation process set out in Part A, Section  
43 3.5 will apply.

1 Normally, the customized consultation approach will be agreed upon by the community and  
2 MNRF prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for a FMP  
3 (stage one). However, if a consultation approach is not agreed upon by the start of stage  
4 one, the requirements described in Part A, Section 3.5 will apply until an agreed upon  
5 approach is developed.

6  
7 If an agreed upon customized consultation approach is developed, the consultation  
8 approach will apply during the preparation and implementation of the FMP. If MNRF and  
9 the First Nation or Métis community agree, changes to the customized consultation  
10 approach may be made during the preparation and implementation of the FMP. If an  
11 agreed upon customized consultation approach has been developed, but the First Nation or  
12 Métis community chooses not to use the approach, the following requirements will apply:

- 13  
14 (a) Part A, Section 3.5, for FMPs;  
15 (b) Part C, Section 7.0, for amendments to FMPs, contingency plans, and FMP  
16 extensions; and  
17 (c) Part D, Section 8.0, for annual operations.

18  
19 The customized consultation approach for each community may address the community's  
20 involvement in some or all of the following:

- 21  
22 (a) the preparation of the FMP;  
23 (b) contingency plans;  
24 (c) FMP extensions;  
25 (d) minor or major amendments to FMPs;  
26 (e) amendments to the long-term management direction;  
27 (f) annual work schedules;  
28 (g) prescribed burn plans;  
29 (h) aerial herbicide and insecticide projects; and  
30 (i) insect pest management programs.

31  
32 In the development of the customized consultation approach, the information and timing  
33 requirements of the formal public consultation process will be considered to ensure that  
34 the schedule for plan preparation and implementation is maintained.

35  
36 The consultation approach will normally include requirements regarding notices,  
37 consultation forums, information availability, written responses to comments and  
38 submissions, and opportunities to consult directly with representatives from the planning  
39 team and the LCC. The consultation approach will normally also address:

- 40  
41 (a) the primary contact person(s) for the community;  
42 (b) the preferred language for correspondence and notices;  
43 (c) specific information or summaries which require translation;  
44 (d) contents and formats of notices;

- (e) identification of Indigenous media which are used by the community;
- (f) a process for exchanging necessary information in a timely manner;
- (g) timing, notification, content and format of consultation forums such as community meetings or First Nation and Métis community information centres;
- (h) involvement in the preparation and review of the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1), including the First Nation and Métis values information, and the public availability of First Nation and Métis values information;
- (i) involvement in the planning of operations to protect First Nation and Métis values; and
- (j) involvement in the preparation and review of the Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3).

### **3.5 Proceeding Without an Agreed Upon Customized Consultation Approach**

If a customized consultation approach with a First Nation or Métis community is not agreed upon in accordance with Part A, Section 3.4, or if an agreed upon customized consultation approach has been developed but the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach, the requirements described in this section will apply.

For each notice required in connection with the preparation for a FMP, a direct written notice will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community in English, and upon request, in the Indigenous language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in Indigenous media where available.

Each time a public information forum is scheduled, the MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis forum (e.g., information centre). At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis forum will be provided.

#### **3.5.1 Forest Management Plans**

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part A, Section 2.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

3.5.1.1 Consultation

Stage One – Invitation to Participate

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.1, and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- (a) an invitation to identify First Nation or Métis values and participate in the preparation of the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1) and the community demographic profile (Part A, Section 3.6.2); and
- (b) a request to advise MNRF if and how the community wishes to participate in the preparation of the report.

Preparation of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to invite the community to participate in the desired forest and benefits meeting (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1).

The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a presentation of the proposed long-term management direction and the preliminary determination of sustainability (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3). If one or more communities express an interest, a presentation will be offered and those communities will be invited to attend.

Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.2, and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- (a) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information Report and the community demographic profile;
- (b) an invitation to participate in the planning of forest management operations to address identified First Nation and Métis values, the results of which will be reflected in the draft Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3); and

- 1 (c) a request to advise MNRF if and how the community wishes to participate in  
2 the planning of forest operations to address identified First Nation and Métis  
3 values.  
4  
5

6 Stage Three – Review of Proposed Operations  
7

8 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.3,  
9 and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to  
10 the First Nation or Métis community will contain:  
11

- 12 (a) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft First Nation and  
13 Métis Background Information Report and the community demographic  
14 profile;  
15 (b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft Report on  
16 Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3);  
17 and  
18 (c) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information forum, if such  
19 an information forum was requested by the First Nation or Métis community.  
20

21 A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the  
22 information forum (s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.  
23  
24

25 Stage Four – Review of Draft Forest Management Plan  
26

27 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.4,  
28 and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to  
29 the First Nation or Métis community will contain:  
30

- 31 (a) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft Report on  
32 Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values;  
33 (b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft FMP, which may  
34 include the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part B,  
35 Section 6.1); and  
36 (c) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information forum, if such  
37 an information forum was requested by the First Nation or Métis community.  
38

39 A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the  
40 information forum to remind the First Nation and/or Métis community.  
41  
42

## Stage Five – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan

The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.5 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.

### **3.6 Documentation**

During the preparation of a FMP, a number of documents related to First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation will be prepared. These documents include a First Nation and Métis Background Information Report, a Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values and a Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement and Consultation. The MNRF shall seek advice from each First Nation and Métis community regarding the public availability of all or part of First Nation and Métis values information in those documents, having regard to MNRF's legal obligations with respect to the management of information.

#### **3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report**

MNRF will invite First Nation and Métis communities to identify First Nation and Métis values and participate in the preparation of the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information Report, or review and update the existing First Nation and Métis Background Information Report. Traditional ecological knowledge, where available and applicable to forest management, may be a source of information. The First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will include:

- (a) a summary of the use of natural resources on the management unit, particularly with respect to hunting, fishing, trapping, harvesting of wood for domestic purposes, and gathering;
- (b) a summary of forest management-related concerns;
- (c) a summary of the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of the report; and
- (d) First Nation and Métis values information.

Those values that are of importance to the First Nation and Métis communities and that may be affected by forest operations in the management unit will be portrayed.

First Nation and Métis Values information includes:

- (a) local governance body(s) or reserve(s) in or near the management unit;

- (b) areas used by First Nation and Métis communities, particularly with respect to hunting, fishing, trapping, harvesting wood for domestic purposes, and gathering;
- (c) lands that have been identified as potential reserve lands for social, economic or capital development projects, or in connection with land claims or litigation;
- (d) sites of First Nation and Métis archaeological, social, cultural, and sacred significance, including First Nation and Métis cemeteries and burial sites;
- (e) areas identified by the First Nation and Métis communities during the archaeological predictive modelling process as having archaeological potential; and
- (f) lands or resources over which the community has made assertions of Aboriginal or treaty rights, including assertions of Aboriginal title.

Where assertions are included as part of First Nation and Métis values information, they will be accompanied by the following statement: *The inclusion/depiction of this information does not necessarily reflect the position of Ontario regarding the nature or strength of the assertion or constitute any admission or limit Ontario's rights in any way. In particular, the inclusion/depiction of this information does not constitute an admission by Ontario that the assertion engages the Crown's duty to consult or accommodate.*

Publicizing the location of certain values may be detrimental to conservation, in which case information may not be portrayed.

Having regard to MNRF's legal obligations with respect to the management of information, MNRF shall seek advice from the First Nation and Métis communities regarding the degree to which, if at all, First Nation and Métis Values information should be made public.

### 3.6.2 Social and Economic Description

The social and economic description that will be prepared for the management unit, will include a demographic profile for each First Nation and Métis community (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11). The MNRF will contact each First Nation and Métis community to invite the community to participate in the preparation and review of the community demographic profile.

### 3.6.3 Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values

The planning team, with the support of the MNRF district manager, will prepare the draft and final Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values. The Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values documents how values identified in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1) that may



1 be affected by the proposed forest operations in the management unit have been  
2 addressed in the planning of forest operations.

3  
4 In the preparation of the FMP, a draft report will be available at the time of public review of  
5 the proposed operations for the 10-year period (stage three) and will include the following  
6 information:

- 7
- 8 (a) a summary of proposed operations;
  - 9 (b) a discussion of proposed primary and branch road corridors of interest to the  
10 First Nation or Métis community;
  - 11 (c) the most current values information and First Nation and Métis values  
12 information;
  - 13 (d) a discussion of proposed operational prescriptions for specific areas of  
14 concern associated with identified First Nation and Métis values;
  - 15 (e) a discussion of how local First Nation and Métis values, including local First  
16 Nation and Métis hunting, fishing, trapping, harvesting wood for domestic  
17 purposes, and gathering have been addressed in the planning of forest  
18 operations; and
  - 19 (f) a comment sheet, and the names of a First Nation and Métis community  
20 contact person and an MNRF contact person.
- 21

22 The draft report will be available at the time of public review of the draft FMP (stage four),  
23 and will include:

- 24
- 25 (a) the draft FMP summary; and
  - 26 (b) items (b) through (f) from stage three, including any update(s).
- 27

28 The final report will be available at the time of public inspection of the MNRF-approved  
29 forest management plan (stage five), and will include:

- 30
- 31 (a) the final forest management plan summary; and
  - 32 (b) items (b) through (e) from stage three, including any updates from stage  
33 four.
- 34

35 During the preparation of an amendment to a FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), the Report on  
36 Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values will be updated by MNRF, if forest  
37 operations proposed in the amendment have the potential to affect First Nation and Métis  
38 values.

39  
40 For a contingency plan, the planning proposal will identify the requirements for the  
41 preparation and review of the Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis  
42 Values (Part C, Section 3.2).

During the preparation of an AWS (Part D, Section 1.0), the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values will be updated by MNRF, if forest operations proposed in the AWS have the potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

### 3.6.4 Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement in the preparation of the FMP will be prepared by the MNRF. The summary will include:

- (a) a list of the First Nation and Métis communities, and the primary contact person for each community;
- (b) a list of the communities' representatives on the planning team and LCC, where applicable;
- (c) a summary of correspondence provided to each community;
- (d) a summary of additional communication efforts with each community;
- (e) a summary of comments or input received from each community, and a summary of planning team responses;
- (f) a summary of First Nation and Métis community participation at public information forums and First Nation and Métis information forums, if such First Nation and Métis information forums were requested by the community; and
- (g) a summary of the implementation of the customized consultation approach for each First Nation and Métis community, where applicable.

For those First Nation and Métis communities that agree, the Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft FMP, and an updated summary will be included in the supplementary documentation of the approved FMP.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared for First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of a minor and major amendment to a FMP (Part C, Sections 7.2 and 7.3), an amendment to the LTMD of a FMP (Part C, Sections 7.4), preparation of a contingency plan (Part C, Section 7.5), preparation of a FMP extension (Part C, Section 7.6), and annual operations (Part D, Section 8.0).

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1		
2		
3	<b>PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT .....</b>	<b>3</b>
4	Phase-in Provisions .....	3
5	<b>1.0 INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>6</b>
6	<b>2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION .....</b>	<b>7</b>
7	2.1 Forest Description .....	7
8	2.1.1 Historic Forest Condition .....	7
9	2.1.2 Current Forest Condition .....	7
10	2.1.3 Forest Classification .....	7
11	2.1.3.1 Forest Units and Analysis Units.....	7
12	2.1.3.2 Forest Landscape Classes .....	8
13	2.1.3.3 Other Forest Classifications .....	8
14	2.1.4 Forest Resources .....	8
15	2.1.4.1 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk.....	8
16	2.1.4.2 Fish and Wildlife Inventories.....	9
17	2.1.4.3 Values Information.....	9
18	2.2 Social and Economic Description .....	10
19	2.2.1 Overview of Social and Economic Context .....	10
20	2.2.2 Summary of Demographic Profiles .....	11
21	2.2.3 Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest.....	11
22	2.3 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report .....	11
23	<b>3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION .....</b>	<b>12</b>
24	3.1 Introduction .....	12
25	3.2 Management Considerations.....	12
26	3.3 Base Model.....	12
27	3.3.1 Analysis of Silvicultural Activities .....	12
28	3.3.2 Analysis of Past Silvicultural Performance .....	12
29	3.4 Desired Forest and Benefits.....	13
30	3.5 Strategic Management Zones .....	13
31	3.6 Objectives and Indicators.....	13
32	3.7 Long-Term Management Direction.....	14
33	3.7.1 Available Harvest Area .....	15
34	3.7.2 Selection of Areas for Harvest.....	15
35	3.7.3 Assessment of Objective Achievement.....	16
36	3.7.4 Spatial Assessment of Projected Harvest Areas .....	17
37	3.7.5 Social and Economic Assessment.....	17
38	3.7.6 Risk Assessment .....	17
39	<b>4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS .....</b>	<b>18</b>
40	4.1 Introduction .....	18
41	4.2 Prescriptions for Operations.....	18
42	4.2.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern.....	18

1	4.2.1.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern .....	19
2	4.2.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas .....	19
3	4.2.2.1 Silvicultural Ground Rules .....	19
4	4.2.2.2 Conditions for Important Ecological Features .....	20
5	4.3 Harvest Operations .....	20
6	4.3.1 Harvest Areas .....	20
7	4.3.3 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan.....	21
8	4.3.5 Harvest Volume.....	22
9	4.3.6 Wood Utilization .....	22
10	4.3.7 Salvage .....	23
11	4.3.8 Contingency Area and Volume .....	23
12	4.3.9 Harvest Area Information Products .....	23
13	4.4 Renewal and Tending Operations.....	23
14	4.4.1 Renewal and Tending Areas.....	23
15	4.4.2 Renewal Support.....	24
16	4.5 Roads.....	24
17	4.5.1 Primary and Branch Roads.....	24
18	4.5.2 Operational Roads .....	25
19	4.5.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads .....	26
20	4.5.4 Area of Concern Crossings - Operational Roads .....	26
21	4.5.5 Existing Roads .....	27
22	Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings.....	27
23	4.5.5.1 Road Information Products.....	28
24	4.5.6 Road Water Crossings .....	28
25	4.5.7 Forestry Aggregate Pits .....	28
26	Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits .....	28
27	4.5.7.1 Aggregate Extraction Areas Information Products.....	29
28	4.5.8 Wood Storage Yards.....	29
29	4.5.8.1 Wood Storage Yards Information Products.....	29
30	4.6 Expenditures .....	29
31	4.7 Monitoring and Assessment .....	30
32	4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections.....	30
33	4.7.2 Exceptions .....	30
34	4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration .....	30
35	4.7.4 Roads and Water Crossings .....	31
36	4.8 Fire Prevention and Preparedness .....	31
37	4.9 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction....	32
38	<b>5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY.....</b>	<b>33</b>
39	<b>6.0 DOCUMENTATION.....</b>	<b>34</b>
40	6.1 Supplementary Documentation .....	34
41	6.2 Other Documentation.....	35
42	<b>7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY .....</b>	<b>36</b>
43		

## **PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT**

Part B of this manual describes the content requirements and is a template for writing the forest management plan (FMP). An FMP is comprised of text, information products (e.g., tables and maps) and supplementary documentation.

The Forest Information Manual (FIM) and applicable technical specification(s) will prescribe the format requirements for information products (e.g., maps, tables) to be included in the FMP.

During the preparation, review and approval of the FMP, the documentation requirements of Part B will apply.

### **Phase-in Provisions**

Forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2020 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of the FMPM (2017).

Forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2021 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of the FMPM (2017) except as follows:

- Where the effective date of a forest management plan is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2021 silvicultural monitoring aspects, including regeneration standard parameters in the silvicultural ground rules of the FMP, may at the discretion of the plan author, be prepared in accordance with the previous approved FMP for the management unit.
- Where the effective date of a forest management plan is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2021 and there has been a delay in the preparation of the proposed operations and draft forest management plan beyond the effective date of this manual, the forest management plan will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of this FMPM to the extent reasonably possible.

Forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2022 will be prepared in accordance with the following sections of this FMPM:

- Part B, Section 4.0 through 7.0

Subject to the Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (FOSM) and the phase in provisions for the guidance and direction set out in FOSM's associated policies and related technical documents, silvicultural monitoring aspects, including regeneration standard parameters in the silvicultural ground rules of the FMPs prepared on or after April 1, 2022 may, at the

- 1 discretion of the plan author, be prepared and conducted in accordance with the the
- 2 previous approved FMP for the management unit.
- 3
- 4 Subject to the foregoing phase in provisions forest management plans whose effective date
- 5 is scheduled for renewal on or after April 1, 2023, will be prepared in accordance with this
- 6 FMPPM.
- 7

**FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CERTIFICATION AND APPROVAL PAGE**

The Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page will be located at the front of each draft and approved FMP. The plan author will complete, sign and seal the title, certification and approval page of the draft and final FMP. For FMPs prepared by an organization other than MNRF, the senior company official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The final FMP approval page will also be signed by the MNRF district manager, MNRF regional resources manager, and the MNRF regional director. The FIM provides direction for the Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page, and signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted FMPs.

If the MNRF district manager and MNRF regional resources manager direct other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of a FMP, those people will certify the parts of the FMP that they prepared and indicate they have prepared those parts of the FMP in accordance with the FMPM. Their certification will be documented in the format prescribed in the FIM.

A list of exceptions will follow the title and certification page. The list of forest management plan contributors will follow the list of exceptions. The format to document the list of exceptions and list of forest management plan contributors will be prescribed in the FIM.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

The table of contents will follow the list of forest management plan contributors. The table of contents will also contain a list of tables, a list of figures, and a list of supplementary documentation.

### 1.0 INTRODUCTION

The introduction will describe the purpose of the FMP and set the context for the FMP locally, regionally and provincially.

The FMP text will describe the management responsibilities for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.1.1). The FMP text will include responsibilities of MNRF, the sustainable forest licensee, and other forest companies that operate on the management unit, and any management implications of these responsibilities and arrangements.

The date that the present management unit boundaries were established and a description of any boundary changes since the last FMP was prepared will be documented.

The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the planning team terms of reference.

The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains a brief description of how MNRF's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights, 1993*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the FMP in the form of the SEV consideration document.



## **2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION**

### **2.1 Forest Description**

#### **2.1.1 Historic Forest Condition**

The summary of the historic forest condition will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP. The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the summary of the historic forest condition.

#### **2.1.2 Current Forest Condition**

The FMP text will describe the Crown forest and patent land Crown timber, as described in the planning inventory, and discuss the implications of patent land Crown timber and land type (e.g., large areas of non-productive forest within the management unit) on the development of the FMP. A summary of the land types for the management unit, that summarizes the status of the Crown forest and patent land Crown timber at the beginning of the period of the FMP will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The information will be referenced in the FMP text (Part A, Section 1.2.2). The FMP text will discuss the implications of patent land within the management unit on the development of the FMP. The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the analysis package that documents the development of the planning inventory products and the manner in which forest description information is updated, projected, or forecasted.

#### **2.1.3 Forest Classification**

##### **2.1.3.1 Forest Units and Analysis Units**

The FMP text will describe the forest units used in the FMP. The description of forest units for the management unit will be identified in the FMP (Part A, 1.2.2.1) in accordance with the FIM. The information will be referenced in the FMP text. The FMP text will describe how the forest units provide the ability to assess the requirements of the forest management guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale. If applicable, the FMP text will describe how analysis units were used. The FMP text will reference the analysis package.

A summary of the managed Crown productive forest land area of the management unit by forest unit and age class will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The information will be referenced in the FMP text. The production forest area that is available

for timber production, and the production forest area that is, or is expected to be, unavailable will be identified separately. The FMP text will contain the reasons that production forest area is unavailable for timber production. The FMP text will describe the management implications of the plan start area by forest unit and age class, on the development of the FMP.

#### 2.1.3.2 Forest Landscape Classes

The FMP text will describe the forest landscape classes and the plan start forest composition, structure and pattern (e.g., figures and/or graphs) at the landscape level (Part A, Section 1.2.2.3). The forest landscape pattern will be portrayed. The text will reference the information product (e.g., map). The FMP text will describe the management implications of the plan start forest landscape pattern on the development of the FMP.

#### 2.1.3.3 Other Forest Classifications

The FMP text will describe the other forest classifications (e.g., habitat for wildlife species) used in the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.2.4). The FMP text will also describe any management implications concerning the other forest classifications on the development of the FMP.

Where applicable, a summary of the projected habitat for wildlife species on the management unit will be provided in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The information will be referenced in the FMP text.

Where applicable, information products showing the spatial arrangement of habitats of wildlife species will be included in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The text will reference the information product (e.g., map).

The FMP text will describe the management implications of the plan start habitat on the development of the FMP.

### 2.1.4 Forest Resources

#### 2.1.4.1 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk

Species at risk on the management unit will be identified. If applicable, the FMP text will describe classifications used to identify habitat for forest-related species at risk. The contribution and importance of the management unit in supporting these classified forest dependent species of flora, fish and wildlife will be described. Where other resource management plans (e.g., recovery strategies and management plans for species at risk) or

inventories for these species provide information on the extent and quality of the habitat, and population status, relevant to the management unit, the information will be described. The degree to which the quality or quantity of habitat for species at risk could be affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

Where applicable, information products showing the spatial arrangement of habitats of forest-related species at risk will be included. The text will reference the information product (e.g., map).

The FMP text will describe the implications of species at risk species on the development of the FMP (Part A, Section 1.1.8.7).

#### 2.1.4.2 Fish and Wildlife Inventories

The FMP text will describe the other fish and wildlife resources on the management unit, including a summary of available information on the occurrence of fish and wildlife species based on fish and wildlife inventory and habitat information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.6). The degree to which the quality or quantity of these resources could be affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

The FMP text will describe the implications of the fish and wildlife resources on the development of the FMP.

#### 2.1.4.3 Values Information

The FMP text will identify and briefly describe the values information portrayed (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and how it was used in the preparation of the FMP. The text will include a list of sources of the values information and identify where the data is recognized as being incomplete or missing. The FMP text will describe the management implications of values on the development of the FMP. The values information will be included in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

For resource-based tourism values and old growth red and white pine forest communities, the FMP text will provide a brief description of the values information portrayed. Not all old growth red and white pine forest communities will be managed for old growth values. An explanation of the reasons why any such community will not be managed for old growth values will be provided in the text of the FMP.

The FMP text will describe the land uses on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.8) and their implications on the FMP. The land uses include:

- (a) resource-based tourism areas;

- (b) mineral, aggregate and quarry areas;
- (c) Crown land recreation and cottaging;
- (d) trapping (commercial fur); and
- (e) private land.

The FMP text will describe the provincial parks and conservation reserves, national parks and forest reserves within the boundary of the management unit that contribute to the achievement of management objectives. This description will include a list of national and provincial parks, conservation reserves, forest reserves, and the management emphasis for each protected area and the class of provincial park. In addition, the FMP text will describe any management implications associated with the planning of operations within or in the vicinity of these areas.

The FMP text will also describe any other land use policy areas that are documented in the Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, such as enhanced management areas, that may have implications for forest management activities on the management unit. The FMP text will describe any management implications associated with the planning of operations within these areas.

The FMP text will describe other uncommon or notable natural resource features (e.g., significant old growth stands, large wetland complexes) that occur on the management unit. The degree to which the quality or quantity of these resources have been, or could be, affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

The FMP text will describe the access condition on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.10). For example, the text will describe areas that are currently accessed, roadless areas and areas where land use decisions have restricted access. The FMP text will describe the implications of the plan start access condition on the development of the FMP.

The FMP text will include a statement confirming the commitment of part of the FMP to maintain the viability of the tourism industry by protecting tourism values in the forest management planning process through the application of MNRF's approved forest management guide(s) that addresses forestry and resource-based tourism and the use of RSA's as one method of protecting and sustaining these values.

## **2.2 Social and Economic Description**

### **2.2.1 Overview of Social and Economic Context**

The FMP text will list communities that derive substantial social and economic benefits (e.g., employment, municipal taxes) related to forest management activities, and First Nation and

1 Métis communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional  
2 uses may be affected by forest management activities.

### 3 4 5 2.2.2 Summary of Demographic Profiles

6  
7 The standardized demographic profiles for those communities identified in Part B, Section  
8 2.2.1 will be summarized in the text. The summary will include:

- 9  
10 (a) population trends for each community;  
11 (b) community diversity for each community;  
12 (c) household income for each community; and  
13 (d) employment by industry for each community.

14  
15 The summary will describe the importance of the forest to individual communities. The FMP  
16 text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the  
17 complete profiles.

### 18 19 20 2.2.3 Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest

21  
22 The FMP text will include a summary of the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest  
23 organized by sector. The sectors include:

- 24  
25 (a) forestry;  
26 (b) recreation and tourism;  
27 (c) mining, aggregate and hydro generation; and  
28 (d) any others.

29  
30 The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains  
31 the complete description of industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest.

## 32 33 34 **2.3 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report**

35  
36 If agreed to by the First Nation or Métis community, the First Nation and Métis Background  
37 Information Report will be included in the FMP as follows. The FMP text will summarize the  
38 use of the lands, and natural resources on the management unit by First Nation and Métis  
39 communities and forest management-related opportunities, concerns, and issues for those  
40 communities. The First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section  
41 3.6.1) will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP. The text will  
42 reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete  
43 report.

## **3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**

### **3.1 Introduction**

The FMP text will outline the components of the long-term management direction (LTMD).

Additional documentation requirements associated with the LTMD for specific management units (e.g., Whitefeather Forest) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

### **3.2 Management Considerations**

The FMP text will describe the management considerations and how these considerations affected the development of the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.3).

The FMP text will summarize the information used to identify the management considerations, the sources of the information and how the information was used to confirm or change past management direction. The modified fire response areas, if any, will be identified and portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

### **3.3 Base Model**

The FMP text will identify that the assumptions used to develop the base model inventory and base model related to the land base (e.g., ecological zones, land use decisions), forest dynamics (forest succession, growth and yield), available silvicultural options, biological limits, and other model assumptions identified by the planning team are included in the analysis package. The FMP text will reference the section of the analysis package that provides the details of the development of the base model inventory and the base model.

#### **3.3.1 Analysis of Silvicultural Activities**

The FMP text will describe how the analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3) conducted by a registered professional forester influenced the development of the growth and yield projections (Part A, Section 1.2.4.1), and silvicultural options (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5).

#### **3.3.2 Analysis of Past Silvicultural Performance**

The FMP text will describe the analysis of past silvicultural performance conducted by a registered professional forester and how the results of the analysis influenced the

development of the post-harvest renewal transition rules (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The post-harvest renewal transition rules will be documented in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the post-harvest renewal transition rules.

The FMP text will document any post-harvest renewal transition rules that are not consistent with the results of the analysis of past silvicultural performance. The rationale for adjustments to the default post-harvest renewal transition rules will be documented. If applicable, the FMP text will describe the monitoring program to be used to verify the assumptions used to rationalize the adjustments and will include:

- (a) methodologies;
- (b) timing and duration; and
- (c) documentation and reporting.

### **3.4 Desired Forest and Benefits**

The FMP text will describe the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting. The FMP text will include a discussion of how the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1) influenced the development of objectives, indicators and desired levels for the management unit. The summary of public consultation will summarize participation in the desired forest and benefits meeting.

### **3.5 Strategic Management Zones**

If applicable, the FMP text will describe the following for management zones (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1):

- (a) the intent of the management zones; and
- (b) how the management zone was incorporated into the development of objectives and indicators.

If applicable, management zones will be portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

### **3.6 Objectives and Indicators**

The FMP text will describe the assessment of objective achievement, including management objectives, indicators and the time when each indicator is to be assessed. The FMP text will document the desirable levels and targets for each indicator. The management objectives, indicators, desirable levels and targets, and the timing of assessment will be provided in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The information will be referenced in the FMP text. Where objectives relating to the management of forest cover have been established in other plans

1 or policies, the specific plan or policy which is the source of those existing objectives will be  
2 stated in the text and the geographic area(s) that applies to those objectives will be  
3 identified.

4  
5 The FMP text will also document how desirable levels and targets were established, in  
6 consideration of background information, including direction in relevant forest management  
7 guides (Part A, Section 1.1.8.3), the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting, and  
8 the results of scoping analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1). The FMP text will reference the  
9 section of the analysis package with the inputs, results and conclusions for the development  
10 of management objectives and scoping investigations.

### 11 12 13 **3.7 Long-Term Management Direction**

14  
15 The FMP text will describe the strategic modelling (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) conducted to  
16 determine the location, types, and levels of activities (i.e., access, harvest, renewal and  
17 tending) required to manage forest cover to balance the achievement of management  
18 objectives. The FMP text will contain a description of the criteria used for the identification  
19 of areas eligible for harvest (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1). The locations, types, and levels of  
20 activities required to manage forest cover in balancing the achievement of management  
21 objectives investigated during the development of the LTMD will be described. The FMP text  
22 will reference the section of the analysis package that provides the details of the  
23 development of the LTMD.

24  
25 The FMP text will contain a description of the projected forest condition from the strategic  
26 modelling. The applicable 100-year projections for quantifiable objectives will be  
27 documented in the FMP. The projections in the FMP will include information specific to:

- 28  
29 (a) forest condition for the Crown productive forest;  
30 (b) habitat for wildlife species  
31 (c) available harvest area by forest unit; and  
32 (d) available harvest volume by species group, and broad size or product group.

33  
34 The FMP text will describe the change in forest condition from plan start through the 100-  
35 year projections, and any implications of the projected change in area of each forest unit.  
36 The information will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The projected  
37 area of each forest unit will be portrayed graphically in the FMP. The FMP text will reference  
38 the forest condition information.

39  
40 The FMP text will describe the change in habitat for wildlife species from plan start through  
41 the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change. The information will  
42 be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The projected area of habitat for  
43 wildlife species will be portrayed graphically in the FMP. The FMP text will reference the  
44 habitat for wildlife species information.



The FMP text will describe the change in available harvest volume by species group, and broad size or product group from plan start through the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change. The information will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The projected level of available harvest volume will be portrayed graphically in the FMP. The FMP text will reference the available harvest volume by species group, and broad size or product group information.

The volume graph will also present:

- (a) projections from the previous FMPs;
- (b) historic wood utilization; and
- (c) Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels, as identified in the Provincial Wood Supply Strategy.

The outputs of forest modelling will be submitted with the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The decisions made in the development of the strategic model will be documented in the analysis package. The text will reference the sections of the analysis package that contain the decisions made.

The requirements for the information in the analysis package are described in the FIM.

#### 3.7.1 Available Harvest Area

The FMP text will describe the projected levels of available harvest area for each forest unit, and the spatial distribution of harvest over the first four FMP periods (i.e., 40 years). The FMP text will discuss any associated management implications (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will also describe the trends in available harvest area from previous FMP, the current plan, and projected available harvest area, and the implications of the projected change. The information will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The projected level of available harvest area will be portrayed graphically in the FMP. The FMP text will reference the projected levels of available harvest area for each forest unit information.

The spatial distribution over the first four FMP periods (i.e., 40 years) will be portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

#### 3.7.2 Selection of Areas for Harvest

The FMP text will contain a description of the criteria used for the selection of areas for harvest, for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). Areas selected for harvest for the 10-year period will not exceed the available harvest area by forest unit. The text will

document how the criteria reflect upon the strategic modelling, and discuss the relative importance of each criterion and its role in selecting the areas for harvest.

If planned harvest areas do not closely match projections of forest operations in the LTMD, in terms of management zone, age class and/or stage of management, the rationale will be documented in the FMP text.

The planned harvest areas for the 10-year period and the optional harvest areas will be identified.

The FMP text will include a discussion describing how MNRF's forest management guide(s) were considered during the selection of areas for harvest operations. The text will describe how the areas selected for harvest contribute to the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape pattern. Rationale for harvest areas selected for the 10-year period that do not contribute to the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape pattern will be provided.

The FMP text will describe any factors that limited the selection of areas for harvest, such as unresolved issues over forest resource use, habitat for species at risk, and the effects of these limitations on the achievement of forest management objectives.

The text will document input from the public and First Nation and Métis communities that influenced the selection of areas for harvest.

### 3.7.3 Assessment of Objective Achievement

For all management objectives (i.e., spatial and nonspatial) and indicators scheduled for assessment during the preparation and approval of the FMP, the FMP text will document the results of the assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The levels of objective achievement and their relationship to desirable levels and targets, including any differences, will also be documented. If the level of objective achievement is outside the desirable level for an objective, rationale will be provided. The results of analysis to investigate the balancing of objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) will be described in the text. A summary of the projected objective achievement, desirable levels and targets in the LTMD will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference projected objective achievement, desirable levels and targets information.

The FMP text will describe how objectives and indicators to be assessed during FMP implementation will be assessed. The FMP text will also describe how scheduled forest management activities related to these objectives and indicators will contribute to overall objective achievement.

3.7.4 Spatial Assessment of Projected Harvest Areas

The FMP text will document the methods and criteria used to assess the feasibility of the spatial distribution of the harvest and the economic feasibility of the harvest (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will describe how the distribution of harvest areas over the first four FMP periods provides for a spatially and economically feasible harvest. The text will discuss any implications of the spatial distribution of harvest areas on the FMP being prepared and future FMP.

3.7.5 Social and Economic Assessment

The FMP text will document the methodology used to assess the social and economic impacts of implementing the LTMD. The FMP text will describe the expected social and economic impacts of implementing the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will also describe how the quantity of harvest volume supplied to the wood-processing facilities, and the silvicultural investment requirements, may affect the communities identified in the social and economic description (Part B, Section 2.2).

3.7.6 Risk Assessment

The FMP text will describe the risks assessed in the risk assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will also document the potential implications on the achievement of management objectives (e.g., wildlife habitat, available volume), as determined through the risk assessment investigation(s).

## **4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS**

### **4.1 Introduction**

The FMP text will provide a brief description of the contents of this section. The text will describe the areas planned for operations for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.3).

Additional documentation requirements for specific management units (e.g., Whitefeather Forest) concerning the planned operations are described in Part F of this FMPM.

### **4.2 Prescriptions for Operations**

#### **4.2.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern**

The operational prescriptions and conditions for all areas of concern that were developed in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3, will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference and describe the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern information.

For areas of concern prescriptions and conditions that required the completion of supplementary documentation, the text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the additional information, including comments from the public and First Nation and Métis communities. Any objections to an operational prescription or condition for an area of concern as a result of public or First Nation or Métis community comments will be recorded in the supplementary documentation. The responses to those objections will also be documented on the supplementary documentation. The format for the supplementary documentation is prescribed in Appendix III.

Any operational prescription or condition for an area of concern that differs from the specific direction or recommendation in a forest management guide will be identified as an exception. The exceptions monitoring program (Part B, Section 4.7.2) will describe the methods that will be used to monitor the effectiveness of the operational prescription or condition. The exceptions monitoring program will also be identified in the supplementary documentation (Appendix III). The list of exceptions will be referenced in the MNRF district manager's and MNRF regional resources manager's certification and recommendation of the FMP for approval. The format to document the list of exceptions will be prescribed in the FIM.

#### 4.2.1.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern

The information products associated with operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

For candidate bridging areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern from the current approved FMP may be used and will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. If desired, operational prescription and condition information for areas of concern from the new FMP may be used for candidate bridging areas and second-pass harvest areas and will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

#### 4.2.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

##### 4.2.2.1 Silvicultural Ground Rules

Silvicultural ground rules (SGRs) developed for the applicable forest units - ecosite combinations on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2) will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

The FMP text will contain a statement that the prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending presented in the silvicultural ground rules will serve as the prescriptions for operations, including naturally depleted areas that are salvaged, for the 10-year period of the FMP.

The FMP text will include a discussion of how the SGRs reflect the silvicultural options in the base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The FMP text will also include a discussion of how the analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3) conducted by a registered professional forester influenced the development of the SGRs.

The FMP text will describe the SGRs that will most commonly be used to regenerate each silvicultural stratum. The FMP text will state that the most common treatment package(s) in each SGR will be the most likely treatment. The FMP text will also contain a statement that this information represents the best estimate of proposed operations at the time of FMP preparation, and will not limit the selection of any acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments in the SGRs at the time of implementation of operations.

If a treatment that is not recommended in the applicable silvicultural guide(s) is included in a SGR, that treatment will be recorded as an exception in the SGR. The rationale for that exception will be provided. The FMP text will reference the monitoring program that describes the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that treatment (Part B, Section 4.7.2).

1  
2 If a silvicultural trial area is planned for implementation, the trial areas will be planned and  
3 implemented using the approved silvicultural guide(s). The rationale for the trial will be  
4 included in the FMP text and will identify the SGR to be used. The SGR for the trial area will  
5 be documented in the FMP.

6  
7 The FMP text will state that the information products for harvest, renewal and tending  
8 operations required by the FIM will serve as the stand list.

9  
10 The FMP text will describe situations where prescribed burns and aerial applications of  
11 herbicide may occur.

#### 12 13 14 4.2.2.2 Conditions for Important Ecological Features

15  
16 Where a condition on regular operations, or a condition on roads, landings, and forestry  
17 aggregate pits has been developed for important ecological features through application of  
18 MNRF's forest management guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site  
19 scales these conditions will be documented in the FMP. Where conditions apply to a specific  
20 management zone, the text will identify the management zone and where it is portrayed.

21  
22 Any conditions for an important ecological feature that differ from the specific direction or  
23 recommendation in a forest management guide will be identified in the FMP as an  
24 exception. The exceptions monitoring program (Part B, Section 4.7.2) will describe the  
25 methods that will be used to monitor the effectiveness of the conditions. The list of  
26 exceptions will be referenced in the MNRF district manager's and MNRF regional resources  
27 manager's certification and recommendation of the FMP for approval. The format to  
28 document the list of exceptions will be prescribed in the FIM.

### 29 30 31 **4.3 Harvest Operations**

#### 32 33 34 4.3.1 Harvest Areas

35  
36 The areas planned for harvest operations for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.3.1) are  
37 described in Part B, Section 3.7.2. The 10-year area is the planned harvest area. The available  
38 harvest area and the planned harvest area for the 10-year period will be described in the  
39 text. The available harvest area and planned harvest area will be identified and documented  
40 in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The text will discuss how the applicable MNRF  
41 guide(s) (e.g., guide that addresses the conservation of biodiversity at the stand and site  
42 scales) were considered in the planning of harvest operations. The FMP text will reference  
43 the information on the available and planned harvest area.

If applicable, the FMP text will describe the distribution of the planned harvest area by licensee and record the information in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the information on the distribution of the planned harvest area by licensee. The FMP text will include a statement that the approval of the forest management plan does not represent an agreement to make harvest areas available to a particular licensee.

For the area planned for harvest using the clearcut silvicultural system, the required area of stand level residual will be determined, using the direction and standards in MNRF's applicable forest management guide(s). The required area of stand-level residual will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the direction in the applicable forest management guide(s). Rationale will be provided in the text of the FMP for those instances when harvest areas do not follow the residual stand structure requirements of the applicable forest management guide(s).

For harvest related silvicultural trial areas the FMP text will describe:

- (a) the eligibility of treatment(s);
- (b) the eligibility forest type(s); and
- (c) any additional limitations (e.g., size, location, number).

If area is identified for harvest as a result of an insect pest management strategy (Part D, Section 6.0), the area planned for harvest will be documented in the FMP text. The FMP text will discuss the effect on achievement of management objectives.

The FMP text will include a statement that locations where fuelwood can be obtained will be identified in each annual work schedule (Part D, Section 3.2).

#### 4.3.3 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan

The requirements for the planning of bridging operations and second-pass harvest operations are described in Part A, Section 1.3.4. The FMP text will contain a description of the area of bridging operations, by forest unit. The text will also identify the level (i.e., amount) of harvest area for bridging operations (i.e., based on subset of forecast depletions of the current FMP) and the timeframe for completion of the bridging operations. The new FMP will also discuss how the harvest of bridging areas will be considered in the preparation of annual work schedules and management unit annual reports (i.e., timing for reporting against current FMP) developed in accordance with the new FMP.

The FMP text will contain a description of any second-pass harvest areas, including an estimate of the area and volume associated with those areas. Any restrictions on the timing and extent of these operations will be documented in the text.

#### 4.3.5 Harvest Volume

The available harvest volume, and an estimate of the planned harvest volume, for the 10-year period, will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Volumes will be summarized by net merchantable volume, and undersized and defect volume. The method used to estimate the volume for the planned harvest area will be described in the FMP text. If there are any substantial differences between the available harvest volume and the planned harvest volume, by conifer and hardwood subtotals, an explanation will be provided in the text.

#### 4.3.6 Wood Utilization

The text will include a discussion of the anticipated wood utilization of the planned harvest volume for the 10-year period. The planned harvest volume will be recorded by utilization, volume type (i.e., net merchantable, and undersized and defect), product and species in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Upon request by an overlapping licensee and agreement of the planning team, the harvest volumes will also be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees. Any volumes that are in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements for the management unit will be identified as unutilized harvest volume. The text will also include a discussion of the sources of, and reasons for, unutilized volumes. Anticipated effects on the achievement of management objectives and progress toward the desired forest condition, if the projected unutilized volumes are not utilized, will be documented in the text. The plan text will contain a statement that projected unutilized harvest volumes remain available for utilization to support industrial proposals. The FMP text will reference the information on anticipated wood utilization of the planned harvest volume for the 10-year period of the FMP.

The planned harvest volume for each mill projected to receive wood supply from the management unit will be recorded, by volume type, product, and species in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

The FMP text will describe the industrial wood requirements for the 10-year period. The FMP text will include a discussion of whether or not the MNRF wood supply commitment levels were achieved and the implications (e.g., objective achievement) if they are not achieved. The FMP text will reference the information on planned harvest volumes for each mill projected to receive a wood supply from the management unit. If volume is projected to be utilized but it is not possible to forecast a specific mill, the FMP text will include a discussion of the potential markets.

The FMP text will include a statement that the approval of the FMP is not an agreement to make areas available for harvest to a particular licensee, or an agreement to make planned harvest volume available to a particular mill.



4.3.7 Salvage

The requirements for the planning of salvage harvest areas are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.1. The FMP text will document the total area and volume associated with areas of salvage harvest operations. The salvage harvest area and volume will be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the information for salvage harvest areas.

4.3.8 Contingency Area and Volume

The requirements for the planning of contingency area for harvest operations are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.2. The FMP text will briefly describe the purpose and function of contingency area for harvest operations and how these areas were identified. The contingency area and an estimate of the volume will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the information for contingency area and the estimated volume for the area.

4.3.9 Harvest Area Information Products

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

**4.4 Renewal and Tending Operations**

4.4.1 Renewal and Tending Areas

The requirements for the planning of renewal and tending areas are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.3. The planned levels of renewal and tending operations associated with harvest and natural disturbance will be summarized by treatment in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the information for renewal and tending operations associated with harvest and natural disturbances.

The FMP text will include a discussion of how the analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3) conducted by a registered professional forester influenced the planned types and levels of renewal and tending operations. The FMP text will also describe the planned levels of renewal and tending operations and associated expenditures required to achieve objectives described in the FMP. The FMP text will describe supplemental treatments or retreatments, if applicable.

1 Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal, tending and  
2 protection will be submitted with the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

3  
4 For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may be planned in two  
5 passes. The FMP text will describe how area planned to be harvested in two passes will  
6 achieve the silvicultural objectives in the LTMD.

7  
8 For renewal and tending related silvicultural trial areas the FMP text will describe:

- 9  
10 (a) the eligibility of treatment(s);  
11 (b) the eligibility forest type(s); and  
12 (c) any additional limitations (e.g., size, location, number).  
13  
14

#### 15 4.4.2 Renewal Support

16

17 The sustainable forest licensee's program for the collection of seed and the production of  
18 nursery stock, during the 10-year period will be described in the FMP text. A forecast of the  
19 volume of seed to be used (by species), and the quantity of nursery stock to be planted (by  
20 species), for the 10-year period will also be documented in the FMP text.

21  
22 Tree improvement activities scheduled during the 10-year period to support the production  
23 of improved seed will be described in the FMP text, with reference to all seed orchards and  
24 other forest genetic sites and strategies.

25  
26 The information products associated with the locations of tree improvement activities will  
27 be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM.  
28  
29

### 30 4.5 Roads

31  
32

#### 33 4.5.1 Primary and Branch Roads

34

35 A summary of primary and branch road construction will be documented in the FMP text.  
36 Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new  
37 primary road corridor, the rationale for the selected corridor and associated use  
38 management strategy will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP  
39 (Appendix II). The FMP text will reference the supplemental documentation (Appendix II).  
40

41 The rationale, including results of consultation with known affected persons, organizations  
42 and First Nation and Métis communities, for each new branch road corridor, and associated  
43 use management strategy, will be included in the FMP text.  
44

1 If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes will traverse a  
2 provincial park or conservation reserve, the rationale will be provided in the FMP text.

3  
4 The FMP text will identify primary and branch roads that will have access restriction and/or  
5 road transfer implemented during the 10-year period. If a use management strategy for a  
6 primary road restricts public access, the FMP text will reference the supplementary  
7 documentation that contains the rationale for the restriction (Appendix II). If a use  
8 management strategy for a branch road restricts public access, the FMP text will provide the  
9 rationale for the restriction.

10  
11 Each planned new primary and branch road and the use management strategy for the road  
12 will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The length of road to be  
13 constructed during the 10-year period of the FMP will also be recorded in the FMP. The FMP  
14 text will reference the information for each new primary and branch road, and use  
15 management strategy for each road.

16  
17 Where a new primary road, branch road, or landing does not intersect an area of concern for  
18 a value, or an important ecological feature any conditions on the primary road, branch road  
19 or landing as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at  
20 the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

#### 21 22 23 4.5.2 Operational Roads

24  
25 A summary of operational road construction will be documented in the FMP text. The FMP  
26 text will contain a statement that operational roads are normally not maintained after they  
27 are no longer required for forest management purposes and are often decommissioned.  
28 Each operational road boundary, within which an operational road will be constructed, and  
29 the associated use management strategy for the road(s) will be recorded in the FMP in  
30 accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the information for operational road  
31 boundaries. If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the  
32 restriction will also be provided in the FMP text.

33  
34 If a new operational road required for forest management purposes will traverse a provincial  
35 park or conservation reserve, the rationale will be provided in the FMP text.

36  
37 Where a new operational road or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value,  
38 or important ecological feature any conditions on the operational road or landing, as  
39 described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and  
40 site scales), will be documented in the FMP.

#### 4.5.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads

The FMP text will discuss any concerns expressed with road crossings of areas of concern. For each crossing of an area of concern within a primary or branch road corridor, the conditions on construction of the road will be documented in the FMP, and where practical, portrayed in accordance with the FIM. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by a primary road, the receipt of comments will be documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix III, Part B). The FMP text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the FMP that contains the documentation.

If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by a branch road, the receipt of comments will be documented in the summary of public consultation (Part B, Section 6.1) for the FMP. The FMP will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the FMP that contains the public comments.

The FMP text will include a statement that for each new primary or branch road water crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized with the submission of the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.3) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

#### 4.5.4 Area of Concern Crossings - Operational Roads

The FMP text will discuss any concerns expressed with road crossings of areas of concern. For operational road crossings of areas of concern, the conditions on construction of the crossing(s) for individual areas of concern, or groups of areas of concern, will be documented in the FMP, and where practical, portrayed in accordance with the FIM. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by an operational road, the receipt of public comments will be documented in the summary of public consultation (Part B, Section 6.1) for the FMP. The FMP text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the FMP that contains the public comments.

The FMP text will include a statement that for each new operational road water crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized with the submission of the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.3) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

#### 4.5.5 Existing Roads

Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee as described in Part A<sup>1</sup>, Section 1.1.8.10, and other existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF<sup>2</sup>, will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The associated use management strategy for each existing road or road network will also be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Documentation of new or revised use management strategies, and the rationale, will be included in the FMP.

Where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated intent to transfer responsibility for an existing road during the next 20 years (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7), a preliminary indication of the management intent for the road or road network will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. If the sustainable forest licensee plans to transfer the responsibility for a road during this 10-year period, the actions required prior to transfer, including potential removal of water crossings, will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

The FMP text will reference the information on existing road use management strategies including the transfer of road responsibility and decommissioning.

#### Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and the road and/or landing intersects an area of concern for a value, or an important ecological feature, the appropriate conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP, and where practical, portrayed in accordance with FIM.

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and where the road and/or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, or an important ecological feature, conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

---

<sup>1</sup> This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.

<sup>2</sup> Roads under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF are those roads that fall within the definition of "road" under s.48 of the PLA. MNRF does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50*

4.5.5.1 Road Information Products

For each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee as described in Part A<sup>3</sup>, Section 1.1.8.10, and other existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF<sup>4</sup>, information products associated with road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM

4.5.6 Road Water Crossings

The water crossing standards to be implemented, as described in the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings, will be documented in the FMP.

4.5.7 Forestry Aggregate Pits

The FMP text will include a statement that the criteria for a forestry aggregate pit apply as per Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this FMPM.

The operational standards for the extraction of aggregate resources for forestry aggregate pits, as described in Appendix V, will be documented in the FMP.

Aggregate extraction areas will be identified in the FMP as per Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this FMPM.

Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits

The appropriate conditions on operations for forestry aggregate pits, as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP.

If a forestry aggregate pit intersects an area of concern, or important ecological feature, the appropriate conditions on operations, as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to

---

<sup>3</sup> This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.

<sup>4</sup> Roads under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF are those roads that fall within the definition of "road" under s.48 of the PLA. MNRF does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50*

conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP, and where practical, portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

If an existing forestry aggregate pit is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and where the forestry aggregate pit does not intersect an area of concern, or an important ecological feature any conditions on the forestry aggregate pit as described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

All existing forestry aggregate pits will be identified in each annual work schedule (Part D, Section 3.2.3.4).

#### 4.5.7.1 Aggregate Extraction Areas Information Products

Information products associated with aggregate extraction areas will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

#### 4.5.8 Wood Storage Yards

Wood holding yards will be identified and portrayed in the FMP as per Part A, Section 1.3.6.8 of this FMPM.

The operational standards for wood holding yards, as described in Appendix VI, will be documented in the FMP.

#### 4.5.8.1 Wood Storage Yards Information Products

Information products associated with wood storage sites areas will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

### 4.6 Expenditures

The FMP text will identify the projected expenditures required for renewal and maintenance operations, and renewal support, and discuss the associated implications (Part A, Section 1.3.8). Rationale will be provided for the assumptions and ratios used to calculate expenditures associated with the implementation of renewal and tending operations.

The forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the information on expenditures and funding sources.

## **4.7 Monitoring and Assessment**

### **4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections**

The sustainable forest licensee's 10-year compliance strategy will be developed in accordance with the requirements of MNRF's Forest Compliance Handbook. The handbook describes the forest operations inspection process, the requirement for the sustainable forest licensee to produce inspection reports, and the processes for managing operational issues that may be identified through compliance inspections. The 10-year compliance strategy will describe the methods, intensity and frequency of forest operations inspections, particular circumstances for which the sustainable forest licensee will conduct forest operations inspections (e.g., forest operations in, and adjacent to, areas of concern), and the submission of inspection reports to MNRF. The 10-year compliance strategy will be included in the FMP text.

The FMP text will describe the MNRF district program for auditing forest operations and conducting forest operations inspections. The FMP text will also describe how compliance performance on the forest will be communicated to the local citizens' committee (LCC) for their review.

### **4.7.2 Exceptions**

The FMP text will summarize the exceptions monitoring programs to be conducted on the management unit. The full monitoring program that will be conducted will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP and referenced in the FMP text.

The monitoring programs for exceptions will include:

- (a) methodologies;
- (b) timing and duration;
- (c) documentation and reporting; and
- (d) the opportunities for LCC participation.

### **4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration**

The FMP text will summarize the monitoring program to assess regeneration for naturally and artificially regenerated areas, including the information required to assess areas managed under the selection silvicultural system. The monitoring program will assess establishment and performance of regeneration for harvested areas including salvage.



The monitoring program will assess the success of silvicultural activities in the achievement of regeneration standards contained in the SGRs. The Forest Operations and Silvicultural Manual provides direction regarding the standards for observation to assess regeneration.

A summary of the area planned to be assessed for establishment will be provided in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will include a discussion of the area anticipated to be assessed during the 10-year period. The FMP text will reference the information on the area planned to be assessed for establishment.

The full monitoring program will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP and referenced in the FMP text.

The monitoring program for establishment will identify the following:

- (a) assessment methodologies;
- (b) validation methodologies;
- (c) timing for assessments;
- (d) timing for validation; and
- (e) documentation, including the process to address areas not successfully established, and reporting.

The monitoring program for performance will identify the following:

- (a) assessment methodologies;
- (b) timing for assessments; and
- (c) documentation and reporting.

#### 4.7.4 Roads and Water Crossings

A description of the monitoring program for roads and water crossings to be carried out during the 10-year period will be provided in the FMP text. The description will include the methods to be used to inspect the physical condition of roads and water crossings, and the timing and frequency of the inspections to determine if there are environmental or public safety concerns. The planned monitoring for each road or road network will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

### 4.8 Fire Prevention and Preparedness

The forest fire prevention and preparedness measures to be implemented during the 10-year period of the FMP will be described in the text and will apply to the entire management unit. These measures will address how the sustainable forest licensee will prevent the start of wildfires, and how forest workers will be prepared to take immediate action to suppress

small fires. These measures will include any business practices and guidelines for modifying industrial operations developed for fire prevention, preparedness, and suppression purposes. The MNRF guideline for fire prevention planning will be used in the planning of fire prevention and preparedness.

The text of the section will include:

- (a) a description of how sustainable forest licensees will promote fire prevention (e.g., communication, equipment standards and inspections, monitoring compliance with the *Forest Fires Prevention Act*), including a description of how fire prevention efforts will increase during periods of high fire danger;
- (b) a description of how forest workers will be made aware of fire prevention plans and initiatives; and
- (c) a description of how forest workers will be trained to take part in fire suppression, to be considered “trained and capable”.

#### **4.9 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction**

The FMP text will document the assessment of the expected effect of planned types and levels of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and the spatial distribution of harvest areas on the progress towards meeting the objectives in the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.3.9). The assessment will:

- (a) compare the planned harvest, renewal and tending operations to the projections in the LTMD;
- (b) compare the distribution of harvest to the projections in the LTMD;
- (c) compare the stand conditions (e.g., species composition, site class) of the planned harvest areas to the eligible harvest areas;
- (d) examine the effect of the age class distribution and the projected harvest volume of the planned harvest area, on the achievement of the LTMD; and
- (e) examine the effect of the amount of projected unutilized harvest volume on the achievement of the LTMD.

If planned types, levels and spatial distribution of operations deviate from the projections in the LTMD, a discussion of the effects on objective achievement and sustainability will be provided.

## 5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY

The FMP text will contain a conclusion on forest sustainability and include documentation as to how the FMP has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values (Part A, Section 1.3.11). The conclusion will be based on the assessment of objective achievement, the spatial assessments, the social and economic assessment, the risk assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2), prescriptions and conditions for the protection of values, and conditions on regular operations for the protection of important ecological features.

The documentation of the determination of sustainability will:

- (a) describe how the FMP provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit and discuss:
  - (i) the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which targets and/or desirable levels are not achieved;
  - (ii) the spatial assessments;
  - (iii) the social and economic assessment; and
  - (iv) the risk assessment.
- (b) provide a conclusion that the FMP has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

## 6.0 DOCUMENTATION

The FMP will include supplementary documentation, which is a summary of information used, and the documentation of decisions and analyses made during the planning process. In addition, it will include documentation of information which, because of its sensitive nature, will not be included in the FMP.

Additional supplementary documentation requirements for specific management units (e.g., Whitefeather Forest) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

### 6.1 Supplementary Documentation

The supplementary documentation of the FMP includes:

- (a) The summary of the historic forest condition (Part A, Section 1.1.8.12);
- (b) the analysis package that describes the inputs and assumptions used, and the results and conclusions of analysis conducted, during the development of the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.1.7);
- (c) the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s) (if First Nation and Métis communities agree) (Part A, Section 3.6.1);
- (d) the updated summary of First Nation and Métis involvement (if First Nation and Métis communities agree) (Part A, Section 3.6.4);
- (e) the social and economic description and demographic profiles (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11);
- (f) the monitoring programs for exceptions (Part B, Section 4.7.2);
- (g) the monitoring program for success of silvicultural activities (Part B, Section 4.7.3)
- (h) documentation of the planning of primary road corridors (Part A, Sections 1.2.6, and 1.3.6.1), and the locations of primary roads in areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.3.6.3);
- (i) documentation of the planning of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1);
- (j) a summary of public consultation in the preparation of the plan that includes:
  - i a summary of all comments received, the consideration of those comments, and if the comments informed planning decisions (e.g., operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern, branch roads and operational road boundaries, area of concern crossings for branch and operational roads);
  - ii a summary of issue resolution (e.g., type of issue, stage initiated, resolution); and
  - iii a summary of each stage of consultation including the desired forest and benefits meeting (e.g., forum, dates, number of attendees, types of supplemental notices sent);

- (k) a report prepared by the LCC concerning its activities during plan preparation; the problems and issues addressed by the committee; an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee structure; and recommendations for change, if any (Part A, Section 2.2.6);
- (l) the final list of required alterations (Part A, Sections 1.4.7.1) and a list of major changes from the draft to final FMP;
- (m) the planning team's terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1); and
- (n) Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) consideration document (Part B, Section 1.0).

The draft FMP will include the supplementary documentation available at the time of draft plan submission. The approved FMP will include all of the supplementary documentation.

## **6.2 Other Documentation**

The public correspondence related to the development of the FMP will be retained on file at the appropriate MNRF office. The Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values will be retained at a location as agreed to in consultation with the First Nation and Métis communities.

## 7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY

A FMP summary will be prepared to facilitate public review of the draft FMP and public inspection of the approved FMP. The summary will be available at the prescribed locations (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.4 and 2.3.3.5) for the duration of the public consultation periods. A French language version of the summary will be prepared. The LCC may provide advice in the preparation of the FMP summary.

The FMP summary will include the following items, and will provide references to the appropriate sections of the FMP for each item:

- (a) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e., responsibilities of MNRF and/or an organization other than MNRF, such as a forest company);
- (b) the names of the MNRF district manager, MNRF regional resources manager, plan author, and LCC contact;
- (c) a summary of the report prepared by the LCC concerning its activities during plan preparation and a statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the plan (for final plan only) (*NOTE: The committee will normally prepare this summary and statement.*);
- (d) a summary of the objectives and indicators;
- (e) a summary of road construction, harvest (area and volume), and renewal activities;
- (f) a portrayal of the areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and the locations of new primary and branch roads, for the 10-year period of the FMP;
- (g) a summary of the major issues encountered and addressed in the FMP;
- (h) for the draft FMP summary, a statement that there is an opportunity during the 60-day review period of the draft FMP to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager or during the 15 days following the completion of the 60 day review period with the MNRF regional director (in accordance with the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1); and
- (i) a comment form (for draft plan only).

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1			
2			
3	<b>1.0</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>4</b>
4		Phase-In Provisions .....	4
5	<b>2.0</b>	<b>FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN AMENDMENTS .....</b>	<b>5</b>
6	2.1	Introduction .....	5
7	2.2	Requested Amendment .....	5
8	2.2.1	Review of Amendment Requests and Categorization of Amendments .....	6
9	2.2.2	Administrative Amendments .....	7
10	2.2.3	Minor Amendments .....	8
11	2.2.4	Major Amendments .....	8
12	2.3	Amendment to the Long-Term Management Direction.....	9
13	2.4	Amendment Documentation .....	11
14	2.5	Deemed Amendments .....	12
15	2.6	Amendment Availability.....	12
16	<b>3.0</b>	<b>CONTINGENCY PLANS.....</b>	<b>13</b>
17	3.1	Introduction .....	13
18	3.2	Contingency Plans .....	13
19	3.2.1	Contingency Plan Requests and Contingency Plan Proposals .....	13
20		Contingency Plan Requests.....	13
21		Contingency Plan Proposals .....	14
22	3.2.2	Preparation of a Contingency Plan .....	15
23	3.2.2.1	Delay in Approval of a Forest Management Plan .....	16
24	3.2.2.2	Delay in Preparation of a Forest Management Plan.....	16
25		Before Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction .....	16
26		After Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction .....	17
27	3.2.2.3	Adjustment to Forest Management Planning Schedules .....	17
28	3.2.2.4	Unscheduled Forest Management Plan Renewal.....	17
29	3.2.3	Submission, Review and Approval of the Contingency Plan .....	18
30	3.2.4	Contingency Plan Availability .....	18
31	<b>4.0</b>	<b>EARLY PLAN RENEWALS.....</b>	<b>19</b>
32	4.1	Introduction .....	19
33	4.2	Proposal for Early Forest Management Plan Renewal .....	19
34	4.3	MNRF Regional Director Review and Approval .....	19
35	<b>5.0</b>	<b>FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS.....</b>	<b>20</b>
36	5.1	Introduction .....	20
37	5.2	Forest Management Plan Extension Request or Proposal .....	20
38		FMP Extension Requests.....	20
39		FMP Extension Proposals .....	20
40	5.2.1	Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension	
41		Request or Proposal .....	21
42	5.2.1.1	Forest Management Plan Extension Request .....	21

1	5.2.1.2 Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal.....	22
2	5.3 Preparation of a Forest Management Plan Extension.....	22
3	5.3.1 Documentation Requirements for a Forest Management Plan Extension .....	23
4	5.3.2 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension...	23
5	5.3.3. Forest Management Plan Extension Availability .....	24
6	<b>6.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION .....</b>	<b>25</b>
7	6.1 General.....	25
8	6.1.1 Public Notices.....	25
9	6.1.2 Responses to Comments .....	25
10	6.1.3 French Language Services Act.....	26
11	6.1.5 Issue Resolution .....	26
12	6.2 Minor Amendments.....	26
13	6.2.1 Public Notice Requirements .....	26
14	6.2.2 Information and Maps Available .....	27
15	6.3 Major Amendments.....	27
16	6.3.1 General.....	27
17	6.3.2 Stage One – Review of Proposed Operations.....	27
18	6.3.2.1 Public Notice Requirements .....	28
19	6.3.2.2 Information Available .....	28
20	6.3.3 Stage Two – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Major Amendment.....	28
21	6.3.3.2 Information Available .....	29
22	6.4 Amendments to the Long-Term Management Direction .....	29
23	6.4.1 General.....	29
24	6.4.2 Stage One – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction.....	29
25	6.4.2.1 Public Notice Requirements .....	30
26	6.4.2.2 Information Available .....	30
27	6.4.3 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Operations.....	30
28	6.4.3.1 Public Notice Requirements .....	31
29	6.4.3.2 Information Available .....	31
30	6.4.4 Stage Three – Inspection of the MNRF-Approved Long-Term Management	
31	Direction Amendment .....	32
32	6.4.4.2 Information Available .....	32
33	6.5.1 Information Available .....	32
34	6.6 Contingency Plans.....	32
35	6.6.1 General.....	32
36	6.6.1.1 Public Notice Requirements .....	32
37	6.6.1.2 Information Available .....	33
38	6.7 Forest Management Plan Extension .....	33
39	6.7.1 Public Notice Requirements .....	33
40	6.7.1.1 Short-Term Forest Management Plan Extension .....	33
41	6.7.1.2 Long-Term Forest Management Plan Extension .....	33
42	6.7.3 Forest Management Plan Extension Availability .....	34
43	<b>7.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION .</b>	<b>35</b>



1	7.1	Introduction .....	35
2	7.2	Minor Amendments .....	35
3	7.3	Major Amendments .....	36
4	7.3.1	Stage One – Review of Proposed Operations .....	36
5	7.3.2	Stage Two – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Major Amendment .....	37
6	7.4	Amendments to the Long-Term Management Direction .....	37
7	7.4.1	Stage One – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....	37
8	7.4.2	Stage Two – Review of Proposed Operations .....	37
9	7.4.3	Stage Three – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Long-Term Management Direction	
10		Amendment .....	38
11	7.5	Contingency Plans .....	38
12	7.6	Forest Management Plan Extension .....	39
13			
14			

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION

This part of the manual contains the planning requirements for amendments to forest management plans, contingency plans, early renewals of forest management plans, and forest management plan (FMP) extensions.

The Forest Information Manual (FIM) and applicable technical specification(s) will prescribe the format requirements for information products to be included in amendments, contingency plans, early plan renewals, and forest management plan extensions.

### Phase-In Provisions

The requirements of Part C will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM), except as follows:

- For Part C, Section 2.0 of this FMPM, the following phase-in provisions apply:
  - For plan amendments categorized by the Ministry of Natural Resources Forestry (MNRF) district manager prior to the effective date of this FMPM, those amendments will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2017);
  - For plan amendments categorized by the MNRF district manager after the effective date of this FMPM, those amendments will be prepared, to the extent reasonably possible, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0 of this FMPM.
- For Part C, Section 3.0 of this FMPM, the following phase-in provisions apply:
  - For contingency plan proposals approved by the MNRF regional director prior to the effective date of this FMPM, those contingency plans will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2017);
  - For contingency plan requests or proposals approved by the MNRF regional director after the effective date of this FMPM those contingency plans will be prepared in accordance with this FMPM.
- For Part C, Section 5.0 of this FMPM, the following phase-in provisions apply:
  - For forest management extension proposals approved by the MNRF regional director prior to the effective date of this FMPM, those forest management plan extensions will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2017);
  - For forest management plan extension requests or proposals approved by the MNRF regional director after the effective date of this FMPM those forest management plan extensions will be prepared in accordance with this FMPM.

## **2.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN AMENDMENTS**

### **2.1 Introduction**

An amendment will be prepared for changes to a FMP or contingency plan. Part D, Section 3.5 identifies specific circumstances when changes during annual work schedule implementation do not require an amendment.

The following two types of amendments may be prepared for changes to a FMP:

- (a) a requested amendment to a FMP that will be consistent with the long-term management direction (LTMD) for the management unit; and
- (b) an MNRF regional director required amendment to the LTMD of an approved FMP to address a change in legislation and/or associated regulations, policy, or a major disturbance that has occurred on the management unit.

The plan author will prepare and certify an amendment and submit the amendment to MNRF in accordance with the requirements of the FMPM and the FIM. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs.

The planning requirements for a requested amendment will depend on the nature of the proposed changes but will normally involve the same technical planning requirements as would be required in the preparation of a FMP. However, the MNRF review and approval requirements, and the opportunities for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation will differ dependent on the category of amendment.

An amendment to provide protection for species at risk will be prepared with the assistance of MNRF staff with expertise in species at risk.

### **2.2 Requested Amendment**

Requested amendments will be consistent with the LTMD for the management unit. Any person can request an amendment by submitting a written request to the MNRF district manager. The amendment request will contain the following information:

- (a) a brief description of the need for, and nature of, the proposed amendment;
- (b) the rationale for the proposed amendment and a discussion of its significance; and
- (c) if new operations are proposed:

- (i) a brief description of the proposed operations, and a description of the previously approved operations in the FMP or contingency plan that will be changed by the proposed amendment; and
- (ii) an outline of the applicable planning requirements for the proposed operations, including any public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, based on the planning requirements for similar operations in a FMP.

#### 2.2.1 Review of Amendment Requests and Categorization of Amendments

The MNRF district manager, in consultation with the plan author and the local citizens' committee (LCC), will decide if preparation of the requested amendment should proceed, and the appropriate categorization of the amendment as administrative, minor or major. The MNRF district manager, in making their decision, will consider factors including:

- (a) whether the requested amendment is consistent with the LTMD of the FMP;
- (b) whether a First Nation or Métis community's established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights may be adversely impacted by the proposed amendment;
- (c) the amount of planning required for the proposed amendment;
- (d) procedural matters identified in the approved Terms of Reference for the LCC (Part A, Section 2.2);
- (e) the amount of anticipated public or First Nation and Métis community interest in the proposed amendment;
- (f) whether there are legitimate time constraints that must be met for reasons of public safety, biological or industrial necessity, or public convenience and necessity;
- (g) requests of a similar nature;
- (h) the adequacy and relevancy of information available at the time of the request on values potentially affected;
- (i) the anticipated potential effects of the proposed operations;
- (j) the necessity to comply with new laws, any order of a court or tribunal, or any authorization made under a statute or regulation; and
- (k) the urgency to provide protection for species at risk under the ESA.

The Terms of Reference for the LCC (Part A, Section 2.2.4) may identify which requested amendments will be categorized as administrative (e.g., minor operational road boundary changes). These administrative amendments will not require further consultation on the categorization of the amendment.

If an administrative amendment is requested and the type of amendment is not identified in the LCC Terms of Reference, the MNRF district manager may consult the chair of the LCC, or his/her alternate, for the purpose of deciding on the categorization of the amendment.

If an amendment is required to provide protection to species at risk, and the required changes are consistent with the LTMD for the management unit, the amendment will be administrative to facilitate the expeditious planning to provide protection for the species and to allow for the continuation of forest operations.

If an amendment is required to permit salvage harvest operations as a result of a natural disturbance, the amendment will be administrative to facilitate the expeditious planning and implementation of salvage harvest operations to avoid waste of merchantable wood.

If an amendment is required to permit forest operations to proceed in contingency area due to circumstances that caused some of the planned harvest area to be unavailable for harvest (e.g., wildfire, blowdown) (Part A, Section 1.3.3.2), the amendment will be administrative to allow for the continuation of forest operations.

If an amendment is required to add eligible areas for renewal and tending due to natural disturbance or an unforeseen disturbance (including harvest), the amendment will be administrative providing it is consistent with the silvicultural objectives.

The decision on the amendment request and the appropriate category of amendment will be made within 15 days of receipt of the request. The MNRF district manager will prepare a written decision. The decision will be provided to the amendment requestor, the LCC and the sustainable forest licensee. If the decision is to proceed with the amendment, the plan author will prepare and submit the amendment.

#### 2.2.2 Administrative Amendments

Examples of administrative amendments include corrections of errors or omissions in the documentation or information products of approved FMPs. Administrative amendments may also include changes to forest operations where the public, stakeholders, and First Nation and Métis communities have already been consulted through the preparation of the FMP.

MNRF will undertake an internal review of the administrative amendment. This review may recommend approval of the administrative amendment as submitted or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. Under the authority of the MNRF district manager, MNRF will forward the required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the administrative amendment, the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNRF district manager, as per the requirements of the FIM. The MNRF district manager or MNRF district supervisor will certify and approve the administrative amendment within 15 days of the submission of the complete amendment. The FIM provides the format for the title, certification and approval

page for an administrative amendment. The FIM also provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs.

There are no formal public consultation requirements for the preparation of an administrative amendment. The approved administrative amendment will be available to the public (Part C, Section 2.6).

#### 2.2.3 Minor Amendments

If the MNRF district manager in consultation with the LCC decides that the amendment should proceed, and that the appropriate category of amendment is minor, the public consultation requirements described in Part C, Sections 6.2 and 7.2 will apply. The amendment will be prepared in consultation with affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities, certified by the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the minor amendment, and submitted to MNRF.

MNRF will undertake an internal review of the minor amendment. This review may recommend approval of the minor amendment as submitted or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. Under the authority of the district manager, MNRF will forward the required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the minor amendment, the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNRF district manager, as per the requirements of the FIM. The MNRF district manager will certify and approve the minor amendment. The FIM provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a minor amendment. The FIM also provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs. The approved minor amendment will be available for public inspection (Part C, Section 2.6).

#### 2.2.4 Major Amendments

If the MNRF district manager, in consultation with the LCC, decides that the amendment should proceed and that the appropriate category of amendment is major, the amendment will be prepared with the participation of interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities.

As described in Part C, Sections 6.3 and 7.3, formal opportunities for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation will be provided at two stages in the preparation of a major amendment.

After stage one of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation during the preparation of the proposed major amendment, as described in

Part C, Sections 7.3.2 and 7.3.1, the major amendment will be prepared. The major amendment will be certified by the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the major amendment and submitted to MNRF.

MNRF will undertake an internal review of the major amendment, in accordance with the same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4.7), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances. This review may recommend approval of the major amendment as submitted or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will forward the required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the major amendment, the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNRF regional resources manager, as per the requirements of the FIM. The MNRF regional resources manager will certify and recommend the major amendment for approval by the MNRF regional director, in accordance with the same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.5.3), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances.

MNRF will prepare a brief description of how MNRF's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights*, 1993 (EBR), as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the major amendment, in the form of an SEV consideration document. The SEV consideration document will accompany the major amendment when it is submitted to the MNRF regional director for approval.

After approval by the MNRF regional director, the MNRF-approved major amendment is available for inspection at stage two of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, as described in Part C, Sections 6.3.3 and 7.3.2. The FIM provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a major amendment. The FIM also provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs.

### **2.3 Amendment to the Long-Term Management Direction**

The MNRF regional director may require an amendment to the LTMD of an approved FMP if the regional director is of the opinion that the continued implementation of the LTMD for the FMP will not provide for the sustainability of the forest, or to address one of the following:

- (a) a change in an Act or regulations or the application of the federal *Species at Risk Act* to a species or its habitat in Ontario;
- (b) a change in policy; and
- (c) a major disturbance (e.g., forest fire) that has occurred on the management unit.

As described in Part C, Sections 6.4 and 7.4, formal opportunities for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation will be provided at three stages in the preparation of an amendment to the LTMD.

The required amendment to the LTMD will be prepared in accordance with Part A, sections 1.2 to 1.2.7 (Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction), with whatever modifications the plan author and MNRF consider necessary. After the requirements in sections 1.2 to 1.2.7 have been completed, public consultation will be conducted in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 6.4.2 and the First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 7.4.1. The MNRF review and preliminary endorsement of the LTMD will be undertaken in accordance with Part A, Section 1.3.2.

After the MNRF regional director's preliminary endorsement of the LTMD, the planning of proposed operations will proceed. The selection of areas of operations will be in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.3.1 to 1.3.11. After the requirements in sections 1.3.1 to 1.3.11 have been completed, public consultation will be conducted in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 6.4.3 and the First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 7.4.2.

After stage two of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation (Part C, Sections 6.4.3 and 7.4.2,) the necessary planning will be completed and the amendment to the LTMD will be prepared. The amendment to the LTMD will be certified by the plan author and submitted to MNRF.

MNRF will undertake an internal review of the amendment to the LTMD, in accordance with the same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4.4), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances. This review may recommend approval of the amendment to the LTMD as submitted or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will forward any required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the amendment, the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNRF regional resources manager, as per the requirements of the FIM. The MNRF regional resources manager will certify and recommend the amendment to the LTMD for approval by the MNRF regional director in accordance with the same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.5.4), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances. If the MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF regional resources manager's recommendation the MNRF regional director will approve the amendment to the LTMD.

MNRF will prepare a brief description of how MNRF's SEV has been considered in the development of the amendment to the LTMD, in the form of an SEV consideration



document. The SEV consideration document will accompany the amendment to the LTMD when it is submitted to the MNRF regional director for approval.

After approval by the MNRF regional director, the MNRF-approved amendment to the LTMD is available for inspection at stage three of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, as described in Part C, Sections 6.4.4 and 7.4.3. The FIM provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for an amendment to the LTMD. The FIM also provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs.

## **2.4 Amendment Documentation**

Applicable documentation requirements for a FMP (Part B) will apply to the preparation of an amendment to a FMP or contingency plan. Documentation requirements for an amendment include:

- (a) a title, certification and approval page submitted in accordance with the FIM;
- (b) for requested amendments, the amendment request;
- (c) for requested amendments, the MNRF district manager decision on classification and decision to proceed and MNRF district manager rationale;
- (d) amended text, information products and supplementary documentation submitted in accordance with the FIM;
- (e) comments from the LCC, if applicable; and
- (f) a summary of the results of formal consultation for minor and major amendments, and amendments to the LTMD, including public consultation, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and issue resolution.

Information products associated with planned operations will be submitted with the amendment, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

If the MNRF district manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an amendment, those people will certify the parts of the amendment that they prepared, similar to a FMP.

If applicable, a List of Exceptions will be prepared, in the same format as for a FMP, to identify prescriptions or conditions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides.

For a major amendment and an amendment to the LTMD, an SEV consideration document will be prepared by MNRF, and will accompany the amendment when it is submitted to the MNRF regional director for approval.

## **2.5 Deemed Amendments**

Section 11(3) of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, 1994 provides that a FMP is deemed to include part(s) of an agreement, permit or regulation issued under the ESA. In the event that a FMP is amended pursuant to Section 11 (3), the requirements of Part C, Sections 2.1 to 2.5, 6.0, and 7.0 of this manual will not apply. The parts of the agreement, permit, or regulation that are deemed to be included in the FMP will be available with the approved FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website.

The deemed amendment will be submitted to MNRF in a manner similar to a FMP amendment. Information products associated with planned operations will be submitted with the deemed amendment, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. Applicable documentation requirements for a FMP (Part B) will apply to a deemed amendment to a FMP or contingency plan.

## **2.6 Amendment Availability**

All approved amendments will form part of, and will be available with, the approved FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved amendment.

All approved amendments will be submitted and be available on the Ontario Government website with the approved FMP in accordance with the FIM.

## 3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS

### 3.1 Introduction

A contingency plan is an interim FMP required when circumstances affect the implementation of a FMP. These circumstances are described in Part C, Section 3.2.2. The contingency plan will permit the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the current FMP and the approval for implementation of the new FMP. The period of a contingency plan will be consistent with the timeframe to prepare, review, and approve a 10-year FMP.

When a situation arises that requires a contingency plan, the MNRF district manager or MNRF regional resources manager will notify the MNRF regional director. Prior to preparing the contingency plan, a request for a contingency plan or a contingency plan proposal must be endorsed by the MNRF regional director.

### 3.2 Contingency Plans

#### 3.2.1 Contingency Plan Requests and Contingency Plan Proposals

If a contingency plan is warranted, a request or a proposal will be prepared by the sustainable forest licensee, in conjunction with MNRF.

The MNRF regional director will review the contingency plan request or proposal and decide if a contingency plan will be prepared.

#### Contingency Plan Requests

For a contingency plan that is required when there is a delay in the approval of an FMP (e.g., after stage four of consultation) (Part C, Section 3.2.2.1) a contingency plan request will be required. The request will provide:

- (a) the name of the management unit;
- (b) the reason for the contingency plan;
- (c) the proposed period of the contingency plan;
- (d) a brief description of the proposed contents of the contingency plan, including supplementary documentation;
- (e) the schedule for the preparation, review and approval of the contingency plan; and

- 1 (f) the coordination of the interrelationships between the FMP, the contingency  
2 plan, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports.  
3

4 Where only non-contentious areas are being proposed for inclusion in the contingency plan,  
5 which were previously consulted on, no further public consultation will be required. Non-  
6 contentious areas will be determined by the planning team based on comments received  
7 from the public and First Nation and Métis communities during the preparation and review  
8 of the draft FMP.  
9

10 First Nation and Métis communities will be notified of the contingency plan request  
11 following submission of the request to the MNRF regional director.  
12

13 The MNRF regional director will review the contingency plan request and decide if a  
14 contingency plan will be prepared.  
15  
16

#### 17 Contingency Plan Proposals 18

19 For longer-term contingency plans (i.e., normally one to three years) (Part C, Sections 3.2.2.3  
20 and 3.2.2.4) a contingency plan proposal will be required. The contingency plan proposal will  
21 provide:  
22

- 23 (a) the name of the management unit;  
24 (b) the reason for the contingency plan;  
25 (c) the proposed period of the contingency plan;  
26 (d) a brief description of the proposed contents of the contingency plan,  
27 including supplementary documentation;  
28 (e) a description of the public consultation and First Nation and Métis community  
29 involvement and consultation that has occurred to date in the preparation of  
30 the new FMP;  
31 (f) a description of the proposed opportunities for public consultation, First  
32 Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and issue  
33 resolution in the preparation of the contingency plan;  
34 (g) the requirements for the preparation and review of the Report on Protection  
35 of Identified First Nation and Métis Values;  
36 (h) the schedule for the preparation, review and approval of the contingency  
37 plan;  
38 (i) the comments and recommendations, if any, from the LCC;  
39 (j) the identification of other resource users or uses potentially affected by  
40 operations that may be proposed in the contingency plan;  
41 (k) major issues to be considered in the preparation of the contingency plan, if  
42 any;  
43 (l) a discussion of the effect on the timing of the preparation and approval ( i.e.,  
44 planning schedule), and period of the new FMP;

- (m) the coordination of the interrelationships between the FMP, the contingency plan, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports; and
- (n) a title and approval page, signed by the plan author, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, the MNRF district manager, the MNRF regional resources manager, and the MNRF regional director.

Opportunities for public consultation, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and issue resolution will be consistent with the requirements for a FMP, subject to any modifications MNRF and the plan author consider necessary in the circumstances, and will have regard for the extent of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation that has occurred to date in the preparation of the new FMP.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of a contingency plan is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

### 3.2.2 Preparation of a Contingency Plan

The contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with the contingency plan request or proposal endorsed by the MNRF regional director and the requirements in this section. The contingency plan will be prepared by a plan author, who will be a registered professional forester, assisted by a planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2) and a LCC.

Contingency plan documentation will include:

- (a) a title, certification and approval page;
- (b) the contingency plan request or proposal, as part of the supplementary documentation;
- (c) the summary of the LTMD that applies to the contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2.2.2);
- (d) a discussion on how the available harvest area for the period of the contingency plan was pro-rated from the LTMD;
- (e) the content requirements, as per Part B, Sections 4.1 to 4.8 for all areas of operations, and if applicable, Part B, Section 4.9 for new areas of operations;
- (f) other content requirements identified in the endorsed request or planning proposal;
- (g) comments from the LCC, where the contingency plan was prepared in accordance with a contingency plan proposal; and
- (h) a summary of the results of formal consultation, including public consultation, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation and issue

1 resolution, where the contingency plan was prepared in accordance with a  
2 contingency plan proposal.

3  
4 Where the contingency plan was prepared in accordance with a contingency plan proposal,  
5 the requirements for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement  
6 and consultation for contingency plans are described in Part C, Sections 6.6 and 7.5.

7  
8 A brief description of how MNRF's SEV has been considered in the development of the  
9 contingency plan must be included, in the form of an SEV consideration document.

#### 10 11 12 3.2.2.1 Delay in Approval of a Forest Management Plan

13  
14 A contingency plan may be required when there is a delay in the approval of a FMP (e.g.,  
15 after stage four of consultation). This type of contingency plan is normally a short-term  
16 plan(i.e. less than one year).

17  
18 The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations in non-contentious areas from  
19 the draft FMP and may also include areas from the current FMP that have not yet been  
20 harvested, renewed or tended. Non-contentious areas will be determined by the planning  
21 team based on comments received from the public and First Nation and Métis communities  
22 during the preparation and review of the draft FMP.

#### 23 24 25 3.2.2.2 Delay in Preparation of a Forest Management Plan

26  
27 A contingency plan may be required when there is a delay in the preparation of a FMP (e.g.,  
28 prior to stage four of consultation). This type of contingency plan is normally a one or two-  
29 year plan. The appropriate planning, public consultation and First Nation and Métis  
30 community involvement and consultation, as described in the endorsed planning proposal,  
31 will be conducted.

#### 32 33 34 Before Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

35  
36 If the planning proposal is endorsed by the MNRF regional director before the MNRF  
37 regional director's preliminary endorsement of the LTMD for the FMP, the contingency plan  
38 will be consistent with the LTMD in the current FMP. The contingency plan will normally  
39 incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not yet been implemented, including  
40 contingency area, and additional areas if required.

41  
42 If sufficient area is available for the contingency plan in the current FMP, the contingency  
43 plan will incorporate those areas, and no further planning of operations is required. If  
44 additional area is required, operations will be planned in a manner consistent with the LTMD

(or strategic direction) of the current FMP, and the public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation described in the endorsed planning proposal. The planning of operations for the additional area will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

#### After Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

If the planning proposal is endorsed by the MNRF regional director after the MNRF regional director's preliminary endorsement of the LTMD for the FMP, the contingency plan will be consistent with that LTMD. The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not yet been implemented, including contingency area, and additional areas if required.

If sufficient area is available for the contingency plan in the current FMP, and operations in those areas is consistent with the LTMD, the contingency plan will incorporate those areas, and no further planning of operations is required. If additional area is required, the contingency plan will normally incorporate non-contentious areas that have been identified during the development of the LTMD and reviewed by the public and First Nation and Métis community(s) at stage two or stage three of consultation. The planning of operations for the additional area will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

#### 3.2.2.3 Adjustment to Forest Management Planning Schedules

A contingency plan may be required when there is a rescheduling of the preparation of a FMP to balance the number of FMPs prepared in any particular year, or to accommodate management unit amalgamations. This type of contingency plan is normally a one, two, or three year plan. The appropriate planning, public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, as described in the endorsed planning proposal, will be conducted. The contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with Part C, Section 3.2.2.2.

#### 3.2.2.4 Unscheduled Forest Management Plan Renewal

A contingency plan may be required if the MNRF regional director requires the preparation of a new FMP. This type of contingency plan is normally a three-year plan. The appropriate planning, public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, as described in the endorsed planning proposal, will be conducted.

1 The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from the current FMP that have  
2 not yet been implemented, and area selected from contingency area as appropriate. The  
3 planning of operations will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and  
4 documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

### 7 3.2.3 Submission, Review and Approval of the Contingency Plan

8  
9 The contingency plan will be certified by the plan author and submitted for review by MNRF,  
10 in a manner similar to the review of a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4), as described in the endorsed  
11 contingency plan request or proposal. Upon satisfactory completion of changes in response  
12 to the MNRF review, the contingency plan will be certified and recommended for approval  
13 by the MNRF district manager and the MNRF regional resources manager. If the MNRF  
14 regional director agrees with the MNRF district manager's and the regional resources  
15 manager's recommendation, the MNRF regional director will approve the contingency plan  
16 in accordance with the same requirements as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.5.4). The FIM  
17 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a contingency plan.  
18 The FIM also provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with  
19 electronically submitted contingency plan.

### 22 3.2.4 Contingency Plan Availability

23  
24 The approved contingency plan will be available to the public at the office of the sustainable  
25 forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons,  
26 organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment with the  
27 appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved contingency plan.



## **4.0 EARLY PLAN RENEWALS**

### **4.1 Introduction**

At any time during the implementation of a FMP, there may be circumstances that warrant preparation of a new FMP prior to the scheduled date.

### **4.2 Proposal for Early Forest Management Plan Renewal**

If preparation of a new FMP is warranted, a proposal will be prepared by the sustainable forest licensee, in conjunction with MNRF and submitted to the MNRF regional director.

The proposal will contain the following information:

- (a) the name of the management unit;
- (b) the period for the current FMP and the proposed implementation date for the new FMP;
- (c) a description of the circumstances and rationale for the preparation of a new FMP;
- (d) a discussion of additional planning that may be required (e.g., an amendment to the current FMP, a contingency plan); and
- (e) the comments or recommendations, if any, from the LCC.

### **4.3 MNRF Regional Director Review and Approval**

The MNRF regional director will determine whether to proceed with the preparation of a new FMP, and notify the sustainable forest licensee, the plan author, the MNRF district manager and the manager of MNRF's Forest Planning Policy Section, Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch.

## 5.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS

### 5.1 Introduction

A FMP extension, including an extension of a contingency plan, is an extension to the period of the current approved FMP. A FMP may be extended if any planned operations for the activities of access, harvest, renewal or maintenance in the approved FMP are available and are not expected to be completed by the end of the FMP period. The two types of extensions are a short-term extension (i.e., up to three months), and a long-term extension (i.e., more than three months).

### 5.2 Forest Management Plan Extension Request or Proposal

To initiate a FMP extension, a request or proposal will be prepared by the plan author, in conjunction with MNRF.

#### FMP Extension Requests

For short-term extensions, a request will be prepared and will include:

- (a) the name of the management unit;
- (b) the reason for the extension;
- (c) the proposed period of the extension;
- (d) a description of the planned operations from the current MNRF approved FMP or contingency plan to be implemented during the period of the extension, and any planned operations that are not being included in the FMP extension;
- (e) an outline of the documentation requirements for the FMP or contingency plan extension, including supplementary documentation;
- (f) the coordination of the interrelationships between the FMP or contingency plan, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports

#### FMP Extension Proposals

For longer-term extensions a proposal will be prepared and include:

- (a) the name of the management unit;
- (b) the reason for the extension;
- (c) the proposed period of the extension;
- (d) a discussion of planning implications for the new FMP, including;

- (i) identification of the FMPM to be used for the preparation of the LTMD;
- (ii) identification of how the requirements of the applicable guides will be incorporated; and
- (iii) the schedule of FMP preparation;
- (e) a brief discussion on the progress of implementation of the current approved FMP;
- (f) a discussion on the implications of the extension on the achievement of management objectives for the FMP;
- (g) a description of the planned operations from the current MNRF approved FMP to be implemented during the period of the extension, any planned operations that are not being included in the FMP extension;
- (h) an outline of the documentation requirements for the FMP extension, including supplementary documentation;
- (i) identification and description of the proposed approach for notification and consultation with known affected persons;
- (j) identification and description of the proposed approach for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation;
- (k) the coordination of the interrelationships between the FMP, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports; and
- (l) a title and approval page, signed by the plan author, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, the MNRF district manager and the MNRF regional director.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement and consultation of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of FMP extensions is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

#### 5.2.1 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension Request or Proposal

The plan author will ensure that the FMP extension request, or proposal is complete and accurate. The plan author will submit the extension request or proposal to the MNRF regional resources manager.

##### 5.2.1.1 Forest Management Plan Extension Request

The MNRF regional resources manager will review the request and determine whether preparation of the FMP extension should proceed. If the MNRF regional resources manager is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed extension should proceed, the MNRF

1 regional resources manager will recommend approval of the extension request to the MNRF  
2 regional director.

3  
4 The MNRF regional director will consider the MNRF regional resources manager's  
5 recommendation and determine if the preparation of the extension should proceed. If the  
6 MNRF regional director is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed extension should  
7 proceed, the MNRF regional director will notify the sustainable forest licensee, the plan  
8 author, the MNRF district manager, the MNRF regional resources manager, and the MNRF  
9 manager, Forest Planning Policy Section, Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch, once the  
10 request is approved.

11  
12 Upon approval of the request by the MNRF regional director, the extension will be prepared.

#### 13 14 15 5.2.1.2 Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal

16  
17 The MNRF regional resources manager will review the proposal and determine whether  
18 preparation of the FMP extension should proceed and what revisions to the extension  
19 proposal, if any, are necessary. If the MNRF regional resources manager is of the opinion  
20 that preparation of the proposed extension should proceed, the MNRF regional resources  
21 manager will provide First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC an opportunity to  
22 review the extension proposal and provide comments. The MNRF regional resources  
23 manager will consider comments from First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC, if  
24 any, when deciding whether or not to recommend approval of the extension proposal to the  
25 MNRF regional director.

26  
27 The MNRF regional director will consider the MNRF regional resources manager's  
28 recommendation and determine if the preparation of the extension should proceed. If the  
29 MNRF regional director is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed extension should  
30 proceed, the MNRF regional director will notify the sustainable forest licensee, the plan  
31 author, the MNRF district manager, the MNRF regional resources manager, and the MNRF  
32 manager, Forest Planning Policy Section, Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch, once the  
33 proposal is approved.

34  
35 Upon approval of the planning proposal by the MNRF regional director, the extension will be  
36 prepared.

### 37 38 39 **5.3 Preparation of a Forest Management Plan Extension**

40  
41 The FMP extension will be prepared in accordance with the request or proposal approved by  
42 the MNRF regional director. The extension will be prepared by a plan author, who will be a  
43 registered professional forester.

1 The FMP extension will incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not been  
2 completed.

3  
4 For short-term FMP extensions no further public consultation, and First Nation and Métis  
5 community involvement and consultation will be required. Notification requirements for  
6 short-term FMP extensions are described in Part C Sections 6.7 and 7.6.

7  
8 The requirements for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement  
9 and consultation for long-term FMP extensions are described in Part C, Sections 6.7 and 7.6.

#### 10 11 12 5.3.1 Documentation Requirements for a Forest Management Plan Extension

13  
14 In addition to the documentation requirements identified in the approved request or  
15 proposal, the FMP extension documentation will include:

- 16  
17 (a) a title, certification and approval page;  
18 (b) the approved request or proposal;  
19 (c) a map of the primary road corridors, branch road corridors, and the harvest  
20 area that will be carried forward in the plan extension;  
21 (d) comments from the LCC, where the extension was prepared in accordance  
22 with an extension proposal; and  
23 (e) a summary of the results of formal consultation, including public consultation,  
24 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, where the  
25 extension was prepared in accordance with an extension proposal;  
26  
27

#### 28 5.3.2 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension

29  
30 The FMP extension will be certified by the plan author and submitted for review by MNRF in  
31 a manner similar to the review of a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4), as described in the endorsed  
32 request or proposal. Upon satisfactory completion of changes in response to the MNRF  
33 review, the MNRF regional resources manager will certify the FMP extension and  
34 recommend the extension for approval by the MNRF regional director.  
35

36 If the MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF regional resources manager's  
37 recommendation, the MNRF regional director will approve the FMP extension in accordance  
38 with the same requirements as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.5.4). The FIM provides the  
39 format for the title, certification and approval page for a FMP extension. The FIM also  
40 provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically  
41 submitted FMP extensions.  
42

1  
2 5.3.3. Forest Management Plan Extension Availability  
3

4 The approved FMP extension will be available with the applicable FMP at the office of the  
5 sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected  
6 persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment  
7 with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved FMP extension.  
8

## **6.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION**

### **6.1 General**

#### **6.1.1 Public Notices**

The requirements for the contents of notices, the recipients of notices, and information availability will be consistent with the requirements for a FMP, with any modifications MNRF district manager or MNRF regional resources manager considers necessary in the circumstances. Public notices are required for major amendments, amendments to a LTMD, deemed amendments, contingency plans, and FMP long-term extensions. Public notices include direct written notices (email, letter), posted notices (e.g., Natural Resources Information Portal), and media notices (e.g., social media), and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

MNRF will issue direct written notices to interested and affected persons and organizations.

Each public notice will:

- (a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
- (b) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit;
- (c) describe the subject matter of the amendment, contingency plan, or FMP extension;
- (d) identify when and where information will be available; and
- (e) include the name of a contact person(s).

Additional content requirements of the public notice for each stage of public consultation for minor and major amendments, amendments to a LTMD, long-term contingency plans, and FMP long-term extensions are described in Part C, Sections 6.2, 6.3, 6.4, and 6.7.

#### **6.1.2 Responses to Comments**

MNRF, in conjunction with the plan author, will respond in writing if requested, in a timely way, to written comments and submissions received from any person or organization during the preparation of a minor amendment, a major amendment, an amendment to the LTMD, a long-term contingency plan, or a FMP long-term extension that relate to the LTMD or proposed operations. MNRF will respond to form letters received from multiple persons or organizations with a single response to the person or organization that initiated the letter.

The requirement to respond in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal comments that include a request for a written response. All responses will explain how the comments and submissions have been considered.

### 6.1.3 French Language Services Act

The *French Language Services Act*, 1990 (FLSA) as amended from time to time, will govern the French language public consultation requirements for minor amendments, major amendments, amendments to a LTMD, contingency plans, and FMP long-term extensions in designated areas under the act. The FLSA requirements for public consultation for FMPs (Part A, Section 2.3.2.4) will apply.

### 6.1.5 Issue Resolution

If an issue arises during the preparation of a minor or major amendment, an amendment to a LTMD, or a contingency plan, the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1 will apply, with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances (e.g., the specified schedule for issue resolution may be compressed).

## 6.2 Minor Amendments

One formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a minor amendment. The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise those persons and organizations who are known to be directly affected by the proposed operations that the minor amendment has been accepted by the MNRF district manager and to invite the opportunity to review the minor amendment.

### 6.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

Direct written notices will be issued to persons and organizations who are known to be directly affected by the operations that are proposed in the minor amendment.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- (a) a statement that those affected by the operations are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to advise when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
- (b) a statement that the minor amendment will receive MNRF approval (by a specific date) if no concerns are raised;



- (c) a three part notice of collection that is compliant with the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act* which identifies:
- (i) personal information is being collected under the authority of Section 68 of the CFSA;
  - (ii) information may be used and shared between MNRF and/or the sustainable forest licensee to contact individuals regarding comments submitted; and
  - (iii) a MNRF contact who can respond to any questions about the collection and use of the personal information;
- (d) a description of the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.5).

## 6.2.2 Information and Maps Available

The minor amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved minor amendment.

## 6.3 Major Amendments

### 6.3.1 General

Formal consultation opportunities will be provided at two stages in the preparation of a major amendment. A public notice will be issued for each stage of consultation.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations, including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the operations that are proposed in the major amendment.

### 6.3.2 Stage One – Review of Proposed Operations

Stage one of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to an information forum. This information forum will be held as part of the detailed planning of operations for the major amendment. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information forum.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- (a) for the public to review and comment on proposed operations for the major amendment, including:

- (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations;
- (ii) the proposed corridor for each primary and branch road, if any, and proposed road locations/conditions; and
- (b) to request additional contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

#### 6.3.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the notice will:

- (a) notify the public that comments are due by a specific date (15-day comment period);
- (b) a three part notice of collection that is compliant with the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act* which identifies:
  - (i) personal information is being collected under the authority of Section 68 of the CFSA;
  - (ii) information may be used and shared between MNRF and/or the sustainable forest licensee to contact individuals regarding comments submitted; and
  - (iii) a MNRF contact who can respond to any questions about the collection and use of the personal information;
- (c) identify the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.5); and
- (d) include the names of the MNRF, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts.

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will be available at the information forum and will be appropriately identified.

#### 6.3.2.2 Information Available

Information available for public review at the information forum will be comparable to the information available at stage three for a FMP (Part A, Section 2.3.3.3), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances.

#### 6.3.3 Stage Two – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Major Amendment

Stage two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to inspect the MNRF-approved major amendment. The public notice will be issued upon approval of the major amendment by the MNRF regional director.

6.3.3.2 Information Available

The MNRF-approved major amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved major amendment.

**6.4 Amendments to the Long-Term Management Direction**

6.4.1 General

Formal consultation opportunities will be provided at three stages in the preparation of an amendment to the LTMD. A public notice will be issued for each stage of consultation.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations, including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the operations that are proposed in the amendment to the LTMD.

6.4.2 Stage One – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

Stage one of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to review the proposed LTMD for the management unit. Information will be available for public review and comment through the appropriate MNRF offices, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee. Members of the planning team will be available to discuss the material. A summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest will be available for public distribution, upon request.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- (a) for the public to review and comment on:
  - (i) the proposed changes to the LTMD for the management unit;
  - (ii) the areas eligible for harvest, and changes to the preferred areas for harvest operations for the remaining period of the FMP;
  - (iii) the analysis of alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary road, if any, that is required for the next 20 years; and
- (b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

#### 6.4.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- (a) a statement that the following information may be obtained through the appropriate MNRF offices, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee:
  - i a summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest; and
  - ii a summary map(s) of:
    - the preferred and optional harvest areas for the remaining period of the FMP; and
    - alternative corridors for each new primary road, if any, that is required for the next 20 years;
- (b) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 15-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
- (c) a three part notice of collection that is compliant with the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act* which identifies:
  - (i) personal information is being collected under the authority of Section 68 of the CFSA;
  - (ii) information may be used and shared between MNRF and/or the sustainable forest licensee to contact individuals regarding comments submitted; and
  - (iii) an MNRF contact who can respond to any questions about the collection and use of the personal information;
- (d) identify the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.5).
- (e) include the names of the MNRF, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts.

#### 6.4.2.2 Information Available

Information available for public review will be comparable to the information available at stage two for a FMP (Part A, Section 2.3.3.2), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances. The information will be available through the appropriate MNRF offices, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice is issued.

#### 6.4.3 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Operations

Stage two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to an information forum. This information forum will be held after the planning of proposed

operations is complete. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information forum.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- (a) for the public to review and comment on the proposed operations for the amendment to the LTMD, including:
  - (i) the proposed areas for access, harvest, renewal and tending operations;
  - (ii) the proposed corridors for each primary and branch road, if any, proposed operational road boundaries, and proposed conditions on roads; and
- (b) to request additional contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

#### 6.4.3.1 Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the public notice will:

- (a) notify the public that comments are due by a specific date (15-day comment period);
- (b) a three part notice of collection that is compliant with the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act which identifies:
  - (i) personal information is being collected under the authority of Section 68 of the CFSA;
  - (ii) information may be used and shared between MNRF and/or the sustainable forest licensee to contact individuals regarding comments submitted; and
  - (iii) an MNRF contact who can respond to any questions about the collection and use of the personal information;
- (c) identify the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.5); and
- (d) include the names of the MNR, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts.

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will be available at the information forum and will be appropriately identified.

#### 6.4.3.2 Information Available

Information available for public review at the information forum will be comparable to the information available at stage three for a FMP (Part A, Section 2.3.3.3), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances.

6.4.4 Stage Three – Inspection of the MNRF-Approved Long-Term Management Direction  
Amendment

Stage three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to inspect the MNRF-approved amendment to the LTMD. The public notice will be issued upon approval of the amendment by the MNRF regional director.

6.4.4.2 Information Available

The MNRF-approved amendment to the LTMD will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved amendment to the LTMD.

6.5.1 Information Available

The deemed amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the deemed amendment.

**6.6 Contingency Plans**

6.6.1 General

The public consultation provisions for the preparation of a longer-term contingency plan will be described in the endorsed planning proposal. The public consultation provisions will be consistent with the requirements for a FMP, and may vary having regard for the extent of public consultation to date on the proposed operations. A minimum of one formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a longer-term contingency plan.

6.6.1.1 Public Notice Requirements

Public notice requirements will be consistent with similar stages for a FMP, with appropriate modifications (e.g., the timeframe for notices may be compressed (15 days)).

6.6.1.2 Information Available

The contingency plan will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved contingency plan.

**6.7 Forest Management Plan Extension**

6.7.1 Public Notice Requirements

6.7.1.1 Short-Term Forest Management Plan Extension

For short-term extensions MNRF will provide direct written notice to persons and organizations who are known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the extension that the extension request has been approved by the MNRF regional director. The direct written notice will include the following:

- (a) a statement to advise that the period of the current FMP has been extended;  
and
- (b) the period of the FMP extension.

6.7.1.2 Long-Term Forest Management Plan Extension

For long-term extensions, one formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation. The purpose of this consultation opportunity is to advise persons and organizations who are known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the extension that the extension proposal has been accepted by the MNRF and to provide an opportunity to comment on the planned operations to be implemented during the extension.

A public notice will be issued at least 15 days prior to approval of a FMP long-term extension. The direct written notice will be issued to persons who are known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP extension.

The public notice content requirements for a long-term extension will contain:

- (a) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
- (b) a three part notice of collection that is compliant with the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act* which identifies:
  - (i) personal information is being collected under the authority of Section 68 of the CFSA;
  - (ii) information may be used and shared between MNRF and/or the sustainable forest licensee to contact individuals regarding comments submitted; and
  - (iii) an MNRF contact who can respond to any questions about the collection and use of the personal information; and
- (c) a statement that the long-term FMP extension will receive MNRF approval (by a specific date) if no concerns are raised.

Upon approval of the long-term FMP extension, the MNRF regional director will issue a public notice to advise the public that the approved FMP extension is available for inspection. The notice will normally be issued before operations are scheduled to commence to provide time for the submission, and public inspection of the annual work schedule.

The public notice will contain the following:

- (a) a statement to advise that the period of the current FMP has been extended; and
- (b) the period of the FMP extension.

### 6.7.3 Forest Management Plan Extension Availability

The approved FMP extension will be available with the applicable FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved FMP extension.



## **7.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION**

### **7.1 Introduction**

This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation and Métis communities, identified as per Part A, Section 3.1.1, in plan amendments, contingency plans, or FMP extensions.

In those cases where a customized consultation approach with a First Nation or Métis community has been developed in accordance with Part A, Section 3.4, and contains provisions for a FMP amendment, a contingency plan, or a FMP extension, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a customized consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach, the requirements described in this section will apply.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in plan amendments, contingency plans, or FMP extensions is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

For a community that is not determined to be a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, MNRF may consult with the community through a process that is not governed by the FMPM.

For each notice required for a FMP amendment, a contingency plan, or a FMP extension a direct written notice will be provided to the First Nation and Métis community in English, and if requested at the time of the last FMP or afterwards, in the Indigenous language specified by the community. A notice will also be placed in the Indigenous media where available.

### **7.2 Minor Amendments**

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 6.1.1 and 7.2 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

The notice will contain an invitation to review and provide comments on the minor amendment. The notice will also include an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft updates to the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3) related to the proposed amendment, if forest operations proposed in the amendment have the potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to provide the final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the MNRF-approved minor amendment.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the minor amendment (Part A, Section 3.6.4).

### **7.3 Major Amendments**

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 6.1.1 and 7.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

#### **7.3.1 Stage One – Review of Proposed Operations**

The MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis community information forum. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis community information forum will be provided.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.3.2, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- (a) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis community information forum, if such an information forum was requested by a First Nation or Métis community;
- (b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the major amendment; and
- (c) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft updates to the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3) related to the proposed amendment, if forest operations in the proposed amendment have potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the information forum(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.

7.3.2 Stage Two – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Major Amendment

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 6.3.3 will apply.

The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to provide the final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the MNRF-approved major amendment.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the major amendment (Part A, Section 3.6.4).

**7.4 Amendments to the Long-Term Management Direction**

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 6.1.1 and 7.4 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

7.4.1 Stage One – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

In addition to the public notice requirements described in Part C Section 6.4.2, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- (a) an invitation to participate in the planning of forest operations which are proposed in the amendment to address identified First Nation and Métis values, the results of which will be reflected in the draft Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the proposed amendment (Part A, Section 3.6.3) ; and
- (b) a request to advise MNRF if and how the community wishes to participate in the planning of forest operations to address identified First Nation and Métis values.

7.4.2 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Operations

The MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis information forum. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis information forum will be provided. The MNRF district manager will also provide the draft Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the proposed amendment.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.4.3, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- (a) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information forum; if such an information forum was requested by the First Nation or Métis community; and
- (b) an invitation to review and provide comment on the draft updates to the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3) related to the proposed amendment, if forest operations in the proposed amendment have potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the information forum(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.

#### 7.4.3 Stage Three – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Long-Term Management Direction Amendment

The MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to provide the final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the MNRF-approved amendment to the LTMD.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in the preparation of the amendment (Part A, Section 3.6.4).

### 7.5 Contingency Plans

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Section 6.6.1 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community.

The planning proposal for the longer-term contingency plan will describe any additional requirements for First Nation or Métis community involvement and consultation in the preparation of the contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2). If the planning proposal for the longer-term contingency plan includes provisions for an information forum(s), the MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis information forum. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis information forum will be provided.

**7.6 Forest Management Plan Extension**

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Section 6.7.1 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation and Métis community. The notice will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community.

For short-term extensions MNRF will notify First Nation and Métis communities that the extension request has been approved by the MNRF regional director.

The planning proposal for the longer-term FMP extension will describe requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in the preparation of the FMP extension (Part C, Section 5.2). If the planning proposal for the FMP extension includes provisions for an information forum(s), the MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis information forum. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis information forum will be provided.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the FMP extension (Part A, Section 3.6.4).

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1		
2		
3	<b>1.0 INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>3</b>
4	<b>Phase-in Provisions .....</b>	<b>3</b>
5	<b>2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS.....</b>	<b>4</b>
6	Silvicultural Ground Rules .....	4
7	Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern .....	5
8	Conditions on Regular Operations.....	5
9	Conditions on Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits .....	5
10	Annual Work Schedules .....	5
11	Management Unit Annual Reports .....	6
12	<b>3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE .....</b>	<b>7</b>
13	3.1 Introduction .....	7
14	3.2 Harvest .....	7
15	3.2.1 Wood Storage Yards .....	7
16	3.2.2 Renewal and Maintenance (Tending and Protection).....	8
17	3.2.3 Roads.....	8
18	3.2.3.1 Water Crossing Construction .....	8
19	Annual Work Schedule for the Year of Construction .....	9
20	3.2.3.2 Other Crossings of Areas of Concern .....	9
21	3.2.3.3 Water Crossing Decommissioning .....	10
22	3.2.3.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits.....	10
23	3.2.4 Fire Prevention and Preparedness.....	11
24	3.2.5 Monitoring and Assessment .....	11
25	3.2.6 Annual Work Schedule Summary Information .....	11
26	3.3 Information Products.....	12
27	3.4 Submission of the Annual Work Schedule.....	12
28	3.5 Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation .....	12
29	3.5.1 Revisions .....	12
30	3.5.2 Changes to Silvicultural Treatments .....	13
31	3.5.3 Changes to Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern.....	13
32	3.5.3.1 Values that no Longer Exist.....	13
33	3.5.3.2 Incorrectly Located Values.....	13
34	3.5.3.3 New Values .....	14
35	3.5.3.4 Incorrectly Identified Values .....	14
36	3.5.4 Changes to Conditions on Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits for Areas	
37	of Concern.....	14
38	3.5.4.1 Water Crossings .....	14
39	Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Streams .....	14
40	Changes to Crossing Conditions or Locations .....	15
41	Streams That Do Not Exist .....	15
42	3.5.4.2 Non-Water Crossings .....	16

1	Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Values.....	16
2	Changes to Conditions .....	16
3	Values that no Longer Exist.....	16
4	Changes to Conditions on Existing Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits .....	17
5	3.5.5 Documentation for Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation ...	17
6	<b>4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS .....</b>	<b>19</b>
7	<b>5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS .....</b>	<b>20</b>
8	<b>6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS .....</b>	<b>22</b>
9	6.1 Introduction .....	22
10	6.2 Development of Insect Pest Management Program .....	22
11	6.2.1 No Aerial Application of Insecticides .....	23
12	6.2.2 Aerial Application of Insecticides.....	23
13	<b>7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION .....</b>	<b>24</b>
14	7.1 General.....	24
15	7.1.1 Public Notices.....	24
16	7.1.2 French Language Services Act.....	24
17	7.2 Annual Work Schedules .....	25
18	7.3 Prescribed Burns .....	25
19	7.4 Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects, and Road Maintenance Herbicide	
20	Application .....	26
21	7.5 Insect Pest Management Programs.....	27
22	7.5.1 General.....	27
23	7.5.2 Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program .....	27
24	7.5.3 Notification of Insect Pest Management Program Approval.....	29
25	7.5.4 Issue Resolution .....	29
26	<b>8.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION .....</b>	<b>30</b>
27	8.1 Introduction .....	30
28	8.2 Annual Work Schedules .....	31
29	8.2.1 Submission of the Annual Work Schedule.....	31
30	8.2.2 Revisions .....	32
31	8.2.3 First Nation and Métis Community Notice Requirements .....	32
32	8.3 Prescribed Burns .....	32
33	8.4 Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects, and Road Maintenance Herbicide Application	
34	.....	33
35	8.5 Insect Pest Management Programs.....	33
36	8.5.1 Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program .....	33
37	8.5.2 Notification of Insect Pest Management Program Approval.....	34
38		

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION

This part of the manual describes the requirements for annual operations, including the preparation of forest operations prescriptions and annual work schedules (AWS), and the detailed project planning required before the implementation of forest operations.

The link between the prescriptions for operations in the forest management plan (FMP) and the scheduled operations in the AWS is the forest operations prescription. The requirements for the development of forest operations prescriptions are described in section 2.0.

An AWS identifies operations that are scheduled for implementation during the year. The requirements for the preparation, and viewing of an AWS are described in section 3.0.

When prescribed burns, aerial herbicide or aerial insecticide projects are scheduled in an AWS, detailed project planning is required. Section 4.0 describes the planning requirements for prescribed burns. Section 5.0 describes the project planning requirements for aerial herbicide and aerial insecticide projects.

If insect pest management programs are required, the types and locations of insect pest management activities will be determined in accordance with the requirements of section 6.0.

Section 7.0 describes the requirements for public consultation. Section 8.0 describes the requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in relation to annual operations.

The Forest Information Manual (FIM) and applicable technical specification(s) will prescribe the format requirements for information products to be included in the AWS.

### Phase-in Provisions

Part D will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM) except as follows:

- For Part D, Section 3.0 of this FMPM, the following phase-in provisions apply:
  - For Annual work schedule revisions submitted prior to the effective date of this FMPM, those revisions will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2017);
  - For Annual work schedule revisions submitted following the effective date of this FMPM, those revisions will be prepared in accordance with this manual to the extent reasonably possible.



## 2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS

A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal and tending activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to achieve the expected forest structure and condition (e.g., silvicultural ground rule (SGR)). A forest operations prescription will be developed before operations can commence. Forest operations prescriptions are integral to the silvicultural effectiveness monitoring. Forest operations prescriptions may also be operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern prepared to protect a value. Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern may not be consistent with a SGR. Conditions on regular operations and conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits may also be prepared to protect important ecological features.

A forest operations prescription will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester.

The complete forest operations prescription for a particular area of operations, or portion of an area of operations, is comprised of a combination of:

- (a) the assigned SGR or operational prescription and conditions for areas of concern in the FMP(s);
- (b) the appropriate silvicultural treatment(s) from the applicable SGR or operational prescription and conditions for areas of concern; and
- (c) the actual SGR and silvicultural treatments implemented on the area of operations, as identified in the applicable management unit annual report(s).

### Silvicultural Ground Rules

For most of the areas of operations, the SGRs in the FMP are the forest operations prescriptions. SGRs will apply to the applicable forest unit-ecosite combinations on the management unit. The most common silvicultural treatment package in the SGR identifies the suite of silvicultural treatments that will be used most frequently. However, any of the acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments identified in the SGR may also be used.

During the preparation of the AWS, the SGR for an area of operations will be confirmed or changed based on the information available at that time. If a change to the SGR is required, an appropriate SGR from the FMP will be selected or a new SGR will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. If there was a change to the SGR based on the information available during the preparation and implementation of the AWS, the SGR implemented will be reported in the management unit annual report (Part E, Section 2.0).

1  
2 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern  
3

4 The operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern in a FMP may include  
5 modified operations developed to protect or manage specific values. These modified  
6 operations, developed to provide protection that are not consistent with a SGR, are deemed  
7 to be the forest operations prescription.

8  
9 In the preparation of the AWS, the operational prescription and conditions for areas of  
10 concern will be confirmed or changed to reflect updated values information. If a change to  
11 the operational prescription and/or conditions for areas of concern is required, an  
12 appropriate operational prescription and/or conditions for an area of concern from the FMP  
13 will be identified or a new operational prescription and/or conditions for an area of concern  
14 will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part  
15 C, Section 2.0. The appropriate operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern  
16 will be identified in the AWS.

17  
18  
19 Conditions on Regular Operations  
20

21 Where a condition on regular operations has been developed for an important ecological  
22 feature through application of a forest management guide (e.g., forest management guide  
23 relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) the condition applies to all  
24 forest operations prescriptions in the AWS that relate to the important ecological feature.

25  
26 Conditions on Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits  
27

28 Where a condition on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits have been developed for  
29 an important ecological feature through application of a forest management guide (e.g.,  
30 forest management guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) the  
31 condition applies to all forest operations prescriptions in the AWS that relate to the  
32 important ecological feature.

33  
34  
35 Annual Work Schedules  
36

37 The AWS will include information products for areas scheduled for access, harvest, renewal,  
38 tending and protection operations, and assessment in accordance with the requirements of  
39 the FIM.  
40  
41

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8

Management Unit Annual Reports

The management unit annual report will contain the information products for areas of access, harvest, renewal, tending and protection operations, in accordance with the requirements of Part E and the FIM.

## **3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE**

### **3.1 Introduction**

An AWS for a year will be submitted to the MNRF for the management unit before any access, harvest, renewal, and maintenance (i.e., tending and protection) operations may proceed in the year, and will be consistent with the FMP. An AWS is normally required for a one-year period that normally commences on April 1, and ends on March 31. The AWS and associated information products will be submitted to the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

The AWS identifies operations that were previously planned and approved in the FMP, and are scheduled for implementation during that year. In addition, water crossings are identified in the AWS.

### **3.2 Harvest**

The average annual available harvest area for the 10-year period of the FMP will guide the amount of area scheduled for harvest in an AWS. If sufficient available harvest area remains in the FMP, up to three years of the average annual available harvest area may be submitted in an AWS in accordance with the FIM to provide flexibility for unforeseen circumstances.

The AWS will also identify and portray locations where fuelwood may be obtained in accordance with the FIM.

If stand level residual requirements were identified in the FMP to be addressed during the implementation of operations, the area will be submitted in accordance with the direction in the applicable forest management guide.

#### **3.2.1 Wood Storage Yards**

Wood storage yards to be used during the year will be identified and portrayed in the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

3.2.2 Renewal and Maintenance (Tending and Protection)

Areas for renewal and maintenance will be submitted in the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

If protection is scheduled during the year as a result of insect pest management planning (Part D, Section 6.0), the scheduled activities will be identified and portrayed in the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

Prescribed burn plans (Part D, Section 4.0), and project descriptions and project plans for aerial applications of herbicides or insecticides (Part D, Section 5.0), are normally prepared during the year of the AWS. Following approval, these documents will form part of and be available with the AWS.

3.2.3 Roads

The location of scheduled primary and branch road construction will be submitted in the AWS. Also, the roads scheduled to be decommissioned or have access controls established will also be submitted in the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

If there are road construction or maintenance activities scheduled for the purpose of creating or maintaining an airstrip along a road these activities will be submitted in the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

3.2.3.1 Water Crossing Construction

Water crossings scheduled to be constructed in the current year, including existing water crossings scheduled for replacement, will be submitted in the AWS. Information products associated with water crossings scheduled for construction and replacement will be submitted in accordance with the FIM.

Higher risk water crossings planned for the following year may be submitted with the AWS to provide MNRF an ice-free season to conduct a review with respect to the *Fisheries Act*.

Where an applicable approved water crossing standard identified in the FMP will be implemented (Part A, Section 1.3.6), an MNRF review of the crossing is not required and the water crossing will be eligible for construction with the submission of the AWS.

In instances where a water crossing standard does not exist, an approved water crossing standard cannot be met in its entirety, or where an operational management zone related to fisheries has identified a need for MNRF review and approval, an MNRF review and approval

1 is required. The decision framework in the Ministry of Natural Resources and  
2 Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry  
3 Water Crossings will be used to assist in determining crossings that require an MNRF review  
4 and approval.

5  
6 All water crossings scheduled to be constructed in the current year require the appropriate  
7 notification forms to be completed and approvals where required as per the Ministry of  
8 Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and  
9 Approval of Forestry Water Crossings, and submitted for inclusion in the AWS.

#### 10 11 12 Annual Work Schedule for the Year of Construction

13  
14 For each new primary, branch or operational road water crossing, a 200 metre crossing  
15 location will be submitted in the AWS in accordance with the FIM. Conditions on  
16 construction and if applicable water crossing standards will be consistent with the FMP.

17  
18 For water crossings that do not require an MNRF review and approval, the 200 metre  
19 location for each water crossing will be submitted in accordance with the FIM.

20  
21 For water crossings that require an MNRF review and approval, the 200 metre location and  
22 conditions on construction for each water crossing will be confirmed or changed as a result  
23 of the review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, or operational  
24 considerations. Water crossings scheduled to be constructed in the current year, including  
25 existing water crossings scheduled for replacement, will be submitted in accordance with the  
26 FIM.

27  
28 Information products for water crossings submitted in an AWS will be identified in the FIM.

#### 29 30 31 3.2.3.2 Other Crossings of Areas of Concern

32  
33 For each crossing of an area of concern that does not involve a water crossing, the  
34 conditions on the construction of the crossing will be confirmed or changed, consistent with  
35 the FMP (Part B, Section 4.5). If a change to the operational prescription and/or conditions  
36 for areas of concern is required, an appropriate operational prescription and/or conditions  
37 for an area of concern from the FMP will be identified or a new operational prescription  
38 and/or conditions for an area of concern will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in  
39 accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0.

### 3.2.3.3 Water Crossing Decommissioning

For roads where MNRF's management intent is to not maintain the road for public use, each water crossing will be examined using MNRF's criteria for the removal of water crossings described in MNRF's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), to determine the appropriate decommissioning activities (e.g., removal of the crossing, establishment of a ford). Where an applicable approved water crossing standard identified in the FMP will be implemented (Part A, Section 1.3.6), an MNRF review of the crossing is not required and the water crossing decommissioning will be eligible for removal with the submission of the AWS.

Where a water crossing standard does not exist, where an approved water crossing standard cannot be met in its entirety, or where an operational management zone related to fisheries has identified a need for MNRF review and approval, an MNRF review and approval is required.

All water crossings scheduled to be decommissioned in the current year require the appropriate notification forms to be completed or approvals where required, as per the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

The conditions on removal (e.g., sediment control plan) and any water crossing standards for each water crossing scheduled to be decommissioned will be consistent with the FMP.

### 3.2.3.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits

Pits scheduled for final rehabilitation before pit closure will be submitted with the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

New forestry aggregate pits are not required to be identified in the AWS in which they will be opened provided they are within primary or branch road corridors, operational road boundaries, or aggregate extraction areas approved in the FMP. The information products associated with new forestry aggregate pits will be updated and reported annually (i.e., forestry aggregate pits opened during the current AWS will be included in the AWS for the following year).

Conditions for forestry aggregate pits, including rehabilitation, are set out in Appendix IV.

1  
2 3.2.4 Fire Prevention and Preparedness  
3

4 The forest fire prevention and preparedness measures described in the FMP will apply to the  
5 entire management unit and all licensees.  
6

7 The AWS will identify the resources available to carry out annual fire prevention and  
8 suppression operations. The MNRF guideline for fire prevention planning will be used in  
9 preparing:  
10

- 11 (a) an itemized list, in tabular format, that describes the fire suppression  
12 equipment that will be available and maintained on areas where operations  
13 are occurring; and  
14 (b) a description of the fire prevention or fire response responsibilities of workers  
15 involved in forest operations.  
16

17 The information that describes the fire suppression equipment that will be available and  
18 maintained in areas where operations are occurring, and the fire prevention or fire response  
19 responsibilities of workers involved in forest operations will be submitted in the AWS in  
20 accordance with the FIM.  
21  
22

23 3.2.5 Monitoring and Assessment  
24

25 The annual component of the 10-year compliance strategy described in the FMP (Part B,  
26 Section 4.7.1) will be submitted in accordance with the FIM. The annual component of the  
27 compliance strategy will contain a description of the forest operations inspection program  
28 that will be implemented, as described in the Forest Compliance Handbook, and be included  
29 as part of the AWS.  
30  
31

32 3.2.6 Annual Work Schedule Summary Information  
33

34 A portrayal of the areas that are scheduled for operations will be prepared in accordance  
35 with the FIM, and will be available for public distribution.  
36  
37  
38



3.3 Information Products

The forest operations that are scheduled in the AWS will be provided in information products in accordance with the FIM.

3.4 Submission of the Annual Work Schedule

The AWS will be submitted to the MNRF and First Nation and Métis communities (Part D, Section 8.2.1) in accordance with the requirements of Part D of this manual and the FIM. The AWS will normally be submitted by January 1 of each year.

The AWS will be available for viewing by the public and First Nation and Métis communities, as described in Part D, Sections 7.2 and 8.2 for 15 days or until April 1<sup>st</sup>, whichever is longer.

Subject to any direction(s) by the MNRF district manager requiring revisions or resubmission of the AWS under Part D, Section 8.2.1 operations may commence once the period of viewing is complete.

The AWS and any subsequent revisions to the AWS will remain available for the one-year duration of the AWS at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the AWS.

3.5 Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation

3.5.1 Revisions

Revisions to an AWS may be required during the year. Revisions will be consistent with the FMP, including any amendments to the FMP. If new areas of operations from the FMP are added during the year, a revision to the AWS will be required. Revisions will be submitted to the MNRF in accordance with the FIM and be available with the AWS.

Where a species that could be affected by forestry operations under a FMP receives protection under the ESA after the approval of the AWS, a revision to the AWS may be required to remove or change operations until the FMP is amended.

First Nation and Métis communities will be provided an opportunity to review revisions related to the scheduled operations in the AWS in accordance with the Part D, Section 8.2.2.

3.5.2 Changes to Silvicultural Treatments

During AWS implementation, if a change to the silvicultural treatment for an area scheduled for harvest, renewal or tending operations occurs, and:

- (a) the change is consistent with the SGR in the FMP, the change will be prepared by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee;
- (b) the change is not consistent with the SGR in the FMP, an appropriate SGR from the FMP will be selected and the change will be prepared by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee; or
- (c) the change is not consistent with any of the SGRs in the FMP, a new SGR will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. The appropriate SGR and silvicultural treatment(s) will be prepared by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee.

Changes to forest operations prescriptions during the implementation of a FMP will not require a review by MNRF. The necessary documentation for changes to SGRs will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.3 Changes to Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

3.5.3.1 Values that no Longer Exist

During the implementation of operations, it may be determined that an identified value no longer exists. In such a situation, the operational prescription for the associated area of concern in the FMP will no longer apply. The area within the planned harvest area associated with the operational prescription for the area of concern may be harvested as per the applicable SGR subject to conditions in the operational prescription for the area of concern (e.g., bald eagle restrictions). An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.3.2 Incorrectly Located Values

During the implementation of operations, the actual location of a value in or adjacent to an area of operations may be different than the portrayed location in the FMP. The operational

prescription for the area of concern in the FMP will be implemented in the actual location of the value. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

#### 3.5.3.3 New Values

During the implementation of operations, previously unidentified values may be encountered. If an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern for the new value is available in the FMP, that operational prescription will be implemented. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required. If no applicable operational prescription is available in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be required.

The necessary documentation for the change in values information that does not require an amendment will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

#### 3.5.3.4 Incorrectly Identified Values

During the implementation of operations, the actual value in an area of operations may be different than the portrayed value identified in the FMP (e.g., eagle nest instead of an osprey nest). If an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern for the actual value is available in the FMP, the operational prescription for the area of concern in the FMP will be implemented for the value. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required. If no applicable operational prescription is available in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be required.

### 3.5.4 Changes to Conditions on Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits for Areas of Concern

#### 3.5.4.1 Water Crossings

##### Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Streams

During the construction of a road, an unidentified stream may be encountered or the actual location of a stream may be different than the portrayed location in the FMP and AWS. In cases where an applicable water crossing standard from the FMP will be implemented in its entirety, the applicable forms will be completed and submitted to MNRF in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for

1 the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings. Upon receipt of the applicable forms,  
2 the AWS will be deemed revised to include the water crossing and the requirements of Part  
3 D, Section 3.5.1 will not apply. The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as  
4 described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.  
5

6 Where an approved water crossing standard does not exist in the FMP (Part A, Section 1.3.6)  
7 or where an approved water crossing standard cannot be met in its entirety, a new 200  
8 metre wide location of the water crossing and conditions on construction will be identified in  
9 a revision to the AWS. The review and approval of the water crossing, with respect to the  
10 *Fisheries Act*, will occur before the revision to the AWS. An amendment to the FMP will not  
11 be required. The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D,  
12 Section 3.5.5.  
13

#### 14 15 Changes to Crossing Conditions or Locations 16

17 During the construction of a road, a change to the condition(s) on construction of a water  
18 crossing may be desired. If the change is consistent with the FMP, the change to conditions  
19 on construction, will be identified in a revision to the AWS. If the change in conditions is not  
20 consistent with the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to  
21 the AWS will be required. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*,  
22 will occur if required in accordance with Part D, Section 3.2.3.1.  
23

24 During the construction of a road, a change to a water crossing location may be desired. A  
25 new 200 metre wide location for the water crossing will be identified in a revision to the  
26 AWS. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, will occur in  
27 accordance with Part D, Section 3.2.3.1.  
28

29 The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
30 3.5.5.  
31

#### 32 33 Streams That Do Not Exist 34

35 During the construction of a road, it may be determined that a previously mapped stream  
36 does not exist. In such a situation, the 200 metre wide location and conditions on  
37 construction in the area of concern will no longer apply. An amendment to the FMP or a  
38 revision to the AWS will not be required.  
39

40 The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
41 3.5.5.  
42  
43

3.5.4.2 Non-Water Crossings

Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Values

During the construction of a road, landing or forestry aggregate pit, a previously unidentified value (i.e., other than a stream) may be encountered or the actual location of a value may be different than the location portrayed in the FMP.

If it is necessary to construct a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit within an area of concern for such a value, and applicable conditions on location(s) and/or construction are available in the FMP, those conditions will apply. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required. If no applicable conditions are available in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS, will be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Changes to Conditions

During the construction of a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit, a change to a condition on construction may be desired. If the change is consistent with the conditions on construction identified in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP will not be required. A revision to the AWS will be required if the condition(s) on construction was not included in the AWS.

If a change to a condition(s) on construction is desired, and the change is not consistent with the conditions on construction identified in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS, will be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Values that no Longer Exist

During the construction of a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit it may be determined that an identified value no longer exists. In such a situation, the conditions on the location(s) and/or construction in the area of concern will no longer apply. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

1  
2 The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
3 3.5.5.

4  
5 Changes to Conditions on Existing Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits

6  
7 During the use of an existing road, landing or forestry aggregate pit, a change to a condition  
8 may be required for a new value or if a value no longer exists. If the required change is  
9 consistent with an available condition for an area of concern identified in the FMP, an  
10 amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

11  
12 The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section  
13 3.5.5.

14  
15  
16 3.5.5 Documentation for Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation

17  
18 For all revisions to an AWS, the necessary documentation will be submitted in accordance  
19 with the FIM.

20  
21 For all changes to operations that do not require an AWS revision, or changes that were  
22 deemed to revise the AWS (Part D, Section 3.5.4.1), updated information on the location and  
23 description of values that were previously unidentified or incorrectly portrayed, or that no  
24 longer exist, will be provided to MNRF, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

25  
26 For changes to the silvicultural treatment for an area scheduled for harvest, renewal or  
27 tending operations the sustainable forest licensee will be responsible for the maintenance of  
28 records for forest operation prescriptions, including changes to silvicultural treatments  
29 during AWS implementation. Any necessary information will be provided in accordance with  
30 the requirements of the FIM. The selection of a different forest operations prescription  
31 during the implementation of a FMP will not require a review by MNRF. Where the selected  
32 SGR changes during implementation of annual operations the SGR change will be reported  
33 on in the management unit annual report in accordance with the FIM.

34  
35 The updated operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and road crossing locations and  
36 conditions on construction of roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits will be provided in  
37 accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

38  
39 AWS revisions will remain available for the one-year duration of the AWS at the office of the  
40 sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Changes to values  
41 information, operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and road crossing locations and  
42 conditions on construction of roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits, during AWS  
43 implementation will remain available for the duration of the FMP at the office of the

- 1 sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected
- 2 persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment
- 3 with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the AWS revision.
- 4

**4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS**

For each prescribed burn scheduled during the year of the AWS, a prescribed burn plan will be prepared. MNRF's Prescribed Burn Manual describes the requirements for the preparation, review and approval of prescribed burn plans. Prescribed burn plans will be submitted in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted prescribed burns.

First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC will be provided an opportunity to view the prescribed burn plan before its approval. The approved prescribed burn plan will form part of and be available with the AWS.

The requirements for a public notice for inspection of an approved prescribed burn plan are described in Part D, Sections 7.3 and 8.3.

The prescribed burn proponent is responsible to ensure each prescribed burn area will be posted at least 14 days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at main roads into the prescribed burn area. Signs will be provided in English and, where applicable, in French, in Oji-Cree, and in other Indigenous languages upon request from Indigenous communities. The signs will indicate the scheduled date of the burn, and contact information of a contact person who can provide more information.



## 5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS

Projects that involve the aerial application of a herbicide are scheduled in the AWS. Projects that involve the aerial application of an insecticide are determined during the planning of insect pest management programs (Part D, Section 6.0).

A project description and a project plan will be prepared for each project that involves the aerial application of a herbicide or insecticide.

The project description will include:

- (a) a statement of the objectives to be achieved;
- (b) a description of the forest in the proposed treatment area;
- (c) the rationale for the proposed treatment including a discussion of the alternatives to herbicides or insecticides considered;
- (d) the technical name, formulation and *Pest Control Products Act* registration number (i.e., PCP number) of the herbicide or insecticide;
- (e) the proposed application rate;
- (f) the type of aircraft to be used (i.e., rotary, fixed wing);
- (g) the name of the project supervisor;
- (h) the portrayed locations of the treatment areas;
- (i) the proposed timing of the activity; and
- (j) a description of the results of the application of the MNRF/ Ministry of the Environment Conservation and Parks (MECP) Buffer Zones and their portrayal.

The project plan will include:

- (a) the description of the methods that will be used to notify the public and First Nation and Métis community(ies) (i.e., a communications plan);
- (b) an operations plan;
- (c) a safety plan; and
- (d) a security plan.

The project description and project plan for an aerial herbicide project will be approved by the MNRF district manager, and will form part of and be available with the AWS. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted aerial herbicide projects.

The project description and project plan for an aerial insecticide project will be approved by the MNRF regional director as part of the development of an insect pest management program (Part D, Section 6.0), and will form part of and be available with the AWS. The FIM

1 provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted aerial  
2 insecticide projects.

3  
4 The requirements for a public notice for inspection of an approved project description and  
5 project plan for an aerial pesticide project are described in Part D, Sections 7.4 and 8.4. The  
6 Pesticide Permit approval from the MECP will be available for inspection through the  
7 appropriate MNRF office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, at the time of  
8 operations.

9  
10 Each herbicide and insecticide spray block on Crown land will be posted not more than seven  
11 days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at all reasonable points  
12 of access and at known locations within or adjacent to the spray block where water is  
13 obtained for human consumption. Signs will remain in place for at least 30 days after the  
14 completion of the project, normally removed by November 1 of the spray year, and will  
15 clearly advise the public of the specific pesticide used in that operation. Signs will be  
16 provided in English and, where applicable, in French, in Oji-Cree, and in other Indigenous  
17 languages upon request by Indigenous communities. The signs will indicate the scheduled  
18 date of spraying, the pesticide to be used, the date when berries can again be consumed,  
19 and the contact information of a contact person who can provide more information.

## 6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS

### 6.1 Introduction

The occurrence and extent of insect infestations are determined annually. When a major insect pest infestation exists the MNRF regional director will determine if an insect pest management program will be developed. The insect pest management program will determine the types and locations of insect pest management activities that are required.

### 6.2 Development of Insect Pest Management Program

When a major insect pest infestation exists, an insect pest management program will be developed by an interdisciplinary team. The team will be comprised of MNRF, and staff of the sustainable forest licensee(s). Representatives from First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC will also be invited to participate on the interdisciplinary team.

Areas eligible for insect pest management will be identified and portrayed, and a range of management options will be considered and documented. The following management options will be considered:

- (a) no treatment;
- (b) accelerated harvest;
- (c) redirected harvest;
- (d) salvage harvest;
- (e) prescribed burns;
- (f) the use of insecticides;
- (g) other controls (e.g., bait traps); and
- (h) appropriate combinations of options (a) to (g).

When considering the use of insecticides, where alternatives to chemical insecticides are commercially available, reasonably cost-effective, and approved federally and provincially for use, MNRF will give preference to such alternatives. Each management option will be evaluated and the results will be documented. The evaluation will consist of:

- (a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option for forest management purposes;
- (b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option as they relate to potential effects on non-timber values identified in the areas eligible for insect pest management;
- (c) a discussion of the anticipated effectiveness of the management option; and
- (d) an estimate of the operational costs related to the management option.

1 A specific course of action will be chosen, based on a comparison of the evaluations of the  
2 management options. The reasons for the selection of the specific course of action will be  
3 documented.  
4  
5

#### 6 6.2.1 No Aerial Application of Insecticides 7

8 If the selected course of action does not involve the aerial application of insecticides the  
9 MNRF will review the selected course of action and rationale. If the MNRF regional director  
10 agrees with the specific course of action, the MNRF regional director will approve the insect  
11 pest management program. If the approved insect pest management program involves  
12 accelerated, redirected or salvage harvest operations, the MNRF district manager will  
13 determine if an amendment to a FMP(s) is required. If an amendment is required, the  
14 amendment will be deemed to be administrative to facilitate the expeditious planning and  
15 implementation of harvest operations to avoid the spread of the insect (Part C, Section 2.0).  
16  
17

#### 18 6.2.2 Aerial Application of Insecticides 19

20 If the selected course of action involves the aerial application of insecticides, specific project  
21 proposals for the insect pest management program will be prepared for review, in  
22 accordance with the requirements for public consultation and First Nation and Métis  
23 community involvement and consultation described in Part D, Sections 7.4 and 8.4. After the  
24 15 day review period, a project description and a project plan will be prepared for each  
25 aerial insecticide project and submitted to MNRF for regional director approval, in  
26 accordance with the requirements of Part D, Section 5.0. The FIM provides direction for  
27 signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted insecticide pest  
28 management programs.  
29

30 As part of the documentation for the insect pest management program, a brief description  
31 of how MNRF's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of*  
32 *Rights, 1993* (EBR), as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development  
33 of the insect pest management program will be produced, in the form of an SEV  
34 consideration document.  
35

## 7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION

### 7.1 General

#### 7.1.1 Public Notices

Public notices are required for AWSs, prescribed burns, roadside maintenance herbicide application, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects and insect pest management programs. Public notices include direct written notices (e.g., letter, email), posted notices (e.g., Natural Resources Information Portal) and media notices (e.g., social media), and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

MNRF will issue direct written notices to interested and affected persons and organizations.

Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

The AWS, prescribed burn plans, project description and project plan for aerial herbicide and insecticide projects will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the AWS, prescribed burn plans, project description and project plan for aerial herbicide and insecticide projects.

Insect pest management programs will be available through the appropriate MNRF office(s) and on the Ontario Government website.

#### 7.1.2 French Language Services Act

The *French Language Services Act*, as amended from time to time, will govern the French language public consultation requirements for annual operations in designated areas under the act. The translation requirements in Part A, Section 2.3.2 will apply to public notices for AWSs, and public notices and signage for prescribed burns and aerial herbicide and insecticide projects. The *French Language Services Act* requirements for French language public consultation for FMPs (Part A, Section 2.3.2.4) will apply to insect pest management programs, with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances.

7.2 Annual Work Schedules

At least 15 days before operations are scheduled to commence, a public notice (i.e., media, posted, and direct written) will be issued by MNRF to advise the public that the AWS is available for viewing. A single notice may be issued for multiple AWSs.

A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided to persons who may be directly affected by forest management operations during the year of the AWS, and in particular those persons who have requested notice of specific activities that will occur in specific areas. Reasonable efforts will be made to identify those persons who may be directly affected, including examination of registered traplines and mining activity within the areas scheduled for operations.

The public notice will:

- (a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
- (b) identify where the AWS will be available for viewing;
- (c) include a portrayal of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the management unit;
- (d) indicate the opportunities for fuelwood;
- (e) indicate the opportunities for tree planting jobs;
- (f) identify that AWS summary information is available; and
- (g) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

Operations scheduled for the year consistent with the approved FMP will be available when the public notice is issued.

The AWS (and any subsequent revisions to the AWS) will remain available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website for the one-year duration of the AWS. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the AWS.

7.3 Prescribed Burns

For prescribed burns, a public notice will be issued by the MNRF at least 30 days before the anticipated date of the burn to advise the public that the prescribed burn plan is available for inspection. A single notice may be issued for multiple prescribed burns on the management unit.

1 A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided by MNRF to known affected  
2 persons and interested persons who have requested notice of prescribed burns.

3  
4 The public notice will:

- 5  
6 (a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;  
7 (b) identify where the prescribed burn plan will be available for inspection;  
8 (c) include a portrayal of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to  
9 allow for identification of the management unit; and  
10 (d) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

11  
12 Additional consultation responsibilities for the proponent are identified in MNRF's  
13 Prescribed Burn Manual.

14  
15 The approved prescribed burn plan will remain available for public inspection at the office of  
16 the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website for the one-year  
17 duration of the AWS. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an  
18 appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved prescribed burn  
19 plan.

20  
21  
22 7.4 Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects, and Road Maintenance Herbicide  
23 Application

24  
25 For aerial herbicide or insecticide projects, and road maintenance herbicide application,  
26 MNRF will issue a public notice at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application to  
27 advise the public that the approved project description and project plan for the aerial  
28 herbicide or insecticide project, or road maintenance herbicide application is available for  
29 public inspection. A single notice may be issued for multiple aerial herbicide or insecticide  
30 projects, or road maintenance herbicide application on the management unit.

31  
32 A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided at least 30 days before the  
33 anticipated date of application to landowners or occupants within one kilometre of the  
34 proposed treatment area. The direct written notice will also be provided to First Nation and  
35 Métis communities and stakeholders who may be directly affected (e.g., tourism businesses  
36 with bear management areas).

37  
38 The public notice will:

- 39  
40 (a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;  
41 (b) identify where information will be available for inspection;  
42 (c) identify the anticipated date(s) of herbicide or insecticide application;  
43 (d) include a portrayal of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to  
44 allow for identification of the management unit; and

1 (e) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

2  
3 An additional public notice for each aerial herbicide or insecticide project, or road  
4 maintenance herbicide application will be issued by the MNRF at least seven days before the  
5 scheduled date of application.

6  
7 The approved aerial herbicide or insecticide project description and project plan, and road  
8 maintenance herbicide application information will remain available for public inspection at  
9 the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website for the  
10 one-year duration of the AWS. Interested and affected persons and organizations can  
11 arrange an appointment with staff with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved  
12 aerial herbicide or insecticide projects and road maintenance herbicide projects.

## 13 14 15 7.5 Insect Pest Management Programs

### 16 17 18 7.5.1 General

19  
20 When an insect pest management program results in a selected course of action that  
21 involves the aerial application of insecticides, one formal opportunity will be provided for  
22 public consultation during the preparation of specific project proposals.

### 23 24 25 7.5.2 Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program

26  
27 The public consultation process will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to  
28 an information forum. Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected  
29 persons and organizations. The purpose of the information forum is for the public to review,  
30 and comment on, the proposed insect pest management program and draft project  
31 proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects. The public notice will normally be issued at  
32 least 15 days before the information forum.

33  
34 The notice will include:

- 35  
36 (a) the name of the MNRF district(s) and the purpose of the notice;  
37 (b) when and where information will be available;  
38 (c) a portrayal of the MNRF district(s) where the insect pest management  
39 program is being prepared;  
40 (d) the name of a contact person and contact information.  
41 (e) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 15 day  
42 review period (to advise the public when comments are due a specific date  
43 will be provided);



- 1 (f) a three part notice of collection that is compliant with the the *Freedom of*  
2 *Information and Protection of Privacy Act* which identifies:  
3 (i) personal information is being collected under the authority of Section  
4 68 of the CFSA;  
5 (ii) information may be used and shared between MNRF and/or the  
6 sustainable forest licensee to contact individuals regarding comments  
7 submitted; and  
8 (iii) an MNRF contact who can respond to any questions about the  
9 collection and use of personal information;; and  
10 (g) a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part D, Section  
11 7.5.4).  
12

13 The following information will be available at the information forum:  
14

- 15 (a) insect infestation information and population forecasts;  
16 (b) a portrayal of areas eligible for insect pest management;  
17 (c) the current version of values information for the affected management unit(s)  
18 in the MNRF district(s);  
19 (d) the evaluation of management options;  
20 (e) the selected course of action, with reasons;  
21 (f) draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects, and associated  
22 information products (e.g., maps);  
23 (g) the results of the district insect pest management program for the same  
24 insect species in the previous year (if any); and  
25 (h) a comment form.  
26

27 Representatives of the interdisciplinary team that developed the insect pest management  
28 program, will be available at the information forum, and will be appropriately identified.  
29

30 There will be a period of 15 days from the date of the information forum for the public to  
31 provide comments to the MNRF.  
32

33 MNRF will respond in writing, if requested in a timely way, to written comments and  
34 submissions received from any person or organization during the preparation of an insect  
35 pest management program. MNRF will respond to form letters received from multiple  
36 persons or organizations with a single response to the person or organization that initiated  
37 the letter. The requirement to respond in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal  
38 comments that include a request for a written response. All responses will explain how the  
39 comments and submissions have been considered.  
40  
41

1  
2 7.5.3 Notification of Insect Pest Management Program Approval  
3

4 Upon approval of an insect pest management program by the MNRF regional director, MNRF  
5 will issue a public notice. The public notice will include:  
6

- 7 (a) a statement that the insect pest management program has been approved;  
8 (b) the name of the MNRF district(s) and the purpose of the notice;  
9 (c) when and where information will be available;  
10 (d) a portrayal of the MNRF district(s) for which the insect pest management  
11 program is being prepared; and  
12 (e) the name of a contact person and contact information.  
13

14 This notice may serve as the public notice for aerial insecticide projects that will be issued at  
15 least 30 days before the anticipated date of application (Part D, Section 5.0), if the  
16 anticipated date of application is within 60 days.  
17  
18

19 7.5.4 Issue Resolution  
20

21 If an issue arises during the preparation of an insect pest management program, the MNRF  
22 regional director stage of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1.2 will  
23 apply.  
24

## **8.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION**

### **8.1 Introduction**

This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation and Métis communities, identified as per Part A, Section 3.1.1, in the preparation of annual work schedules, prescribed burns, road maintenance herbicide application, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs. The purpose of the requirements in section 8.2.1 is to provide an opportunity for First Nation and Métis communities to identify any new values that may be impacted by forest operations in the annual work schedule.

In those cases where a customized consultation approach with a First Nation or Métis community has been developed in accordance with Part A, Section 3.4, and contains provisions for annual work schedules, prescribed burns, road maintenance herbicide application, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a customized consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach, the requirements described in this section will apply.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of annual work schedules, prescribed burns, road maintenance herbicide application, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

For a community that is not determined to be a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, MNRF may consult with the community through a process that is not governed by the FMPM.

For each notice required for an AWS, prescribed burn, road maintenance herbicide application, aerial herbicide and insecticide project, and insect pest management program, a direct written notice will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community in English, and if requested at the time of the last FMP or afterwards, in the Indigenous language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in the Indigenous media, where available.

8.2 Annual Work Schedules

8.2.1 Submission of the Annual Work Schedule

By January 1 of each year the sustainable forest licensee will provide each First Nation and Métis community with a copy of the AWS (i.e., digital information or hard copy information), and invite the First Nation and Métis community to participate in a meeting to discuss the AWS. The purpose of the meeting is to discuss the planned operations with First Nation and Métis communities and provide communities the opportunity to identify any new First Nation and Métis values that are of importance to the First Nation and Métis communities and that may be affected by the forest operations. The MNRF will attend the meeting(s) upon request by the sustainable forest licensee or the First Nation and Métis community.

Following the receipt of the AWS from the sustainable forest licensee, the First Nation and Métis communities will have 60 days to provide comments to the sustainable forest licensee related to the planned operations in the AWS.

Following the 60 day review period by the First Nation and Métis community, the sustainable forest licensee will prepare a summary of First Nation and Métis community involvement on the AWS. The summary will include:

- (a) a summary of communications with each First Nation and Métis community, the dates of any meeting(s), and the primary contact person for each First Nation and Métis community;
- (b) a summary of comments and any new values from each First Nation and Métis community; and
- (c) a summary of how the sustainable forest licensee considered First Nation and Métis community comments and any new values.

The sustainable forest licensee will submit the summary described above to MNRF prior to the period for public viewing (i.e., March 15) (Part D, Section 3.4). The summary of First Nation and Métis involvement in the AWS will also be provided to the First Nation and Métis communities at the same time that it is provided to the MNRF. The district manager may require revisions to and resubmission of the AWS if, in his/her opinion, those revisions are required to accommodate impacts to asserted or established Aboriginal or treaty rights. The district manager will notify the First Nation and Métis communities if a revision to and resubmission of the AWS is required.

If a First Nation or Métis community identifies any new values that are of importance to the First Nation or Métis community and that may be affected by the forest operations, MNRF will invite the community to review and provide comments on the draft updates to the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3). The

1 MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation and Métis community to provide the  
2 updated final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values.

### 3 4 5 8.2.2 Revisions

6  
7 First Nation and Métis communities will be provided an opportunity to review and comment  
8 on revisions to scheduled operations in the AWS in accordance with the Part D, Section  
9 3.5.1.

10  
11 Any revisions to the AWS will be consistent with the FMP, including any amendments to the  
12 FMP. Revisions will be submitted to the MNRF and First Nation and Métis communities in  
13 accordance with the FIM and made available with the AWS.

14  
15 MNRF will provide the proposed revision(s) of the AWS (i.e., digital or hard copy), as  
16 submitted by the sustainable forest licensee (Part D, Section 3.5.1), to First Nation and Métis  
17 communities where MNRF determines that the proposed revision may impact asserted or  
18 established Aboriginal or treaty rights, to ensure there are no new First Nation and Métis  
19 values that may be affected by the forest operations identified in the revision. The MNRF  
20 district manager will consider potential impacts to asserted or existing Aboriginal and treaty  
21 rights when determining how much time First Nation and Métis communities will be  
22 provided to review the proposed revision.

23  
24 Following the opportunity to review the proposed revision by the First Nation and Métis  
25 communities, the district manager will determine if the revision may impact asserted or  
26 established Aboriginal or treaty rights, and whether further consultation with the First  
27 Nation and Métis communities or changes to the proposed revision are required.

### 28 29 30 8.2.3 First Nation and Métis Community Notice Requirements

31  
32 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Section 7.1.1 and  
33 7.2 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.

34  
35 The notice to the First Nation or Métis community will also contain an invitation to develop a  
36 customized consultation approach and specify that the customized consultation approach  
37 may include some or all of the elements listed in Part A, Section 3.4.

### 38 39 40 8.3 Prescribed Burns

41  
42 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1  
43 and 7.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis  
44 community.

1  
2 The notice to the First Nation or Métis community will also contain a portrayal of the  
3 prescribed burn area(s) containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of individual  
4 prescribed burn area(s).

5  
6 First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment with staff through the  
7 appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved prescribed burn area(s).

#### 10 8.4 Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects, and Road Maintenance Herbicide Application

11  
12 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1  
13 and 7.4 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis  
14 community.

15  
16 The notice to the First Nation or Métis community will also contain a portrayal of where  
17 aerial herbicide or insecticide, or road maintenance herbicide application is planned,  
18 containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of individual treatment area(s).

19  
20 First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment with staff through the  
21 appropriate MNRF office to discuss the approved aerial herbicide and insecticide projects,  
22 and road maintenance herbicide application project.

#### 25 8.5 Insect Pest Management Programs

26  
27 The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1  
28 and 7.5 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis  
29 community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the  
30 additional requirements described in this section.

##### 33 8.5.1 Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program

34  
35 The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to  
36 determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis information forum. At  
37 the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis information forum will be provided.

38  
39 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.2 and  
40 modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notice will also  
41 contain:  
42

- 1           (a)     the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information forum; if such  
2                    an information forum was requested by the First Nation or Métis community;  
3                    and  
4           (b)     an invitation to review and provide comments on the proposed insect pest  
5                    management program and draft project proposals for specific aerial  
6                    insecticide projects.

7  
8   A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the  
9   information forum(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.

10  
11  
12   8.5.2   Notification of Insect Pest Management Program Approval

13  
14   The public notice requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.3 will apply, with  
15   modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.  
16

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>1.0</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>2</b>
	Phase-in Provisions .....	2
<b>2.0</b>	<b>CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS .....</b>	<b>3</b>
	2.1 Annual Report Text .....	3
	2.1.1 Title and Certification Page .....	3
	2.1.2 Introduction .....	3
	2.1.3 Discussion of Forest Operations .....	3
	2.1.4 Monitoring and Assessment .....	4
	2.2 Annual Report Information.....	4
	2.2.1 Wood Utilization .....	4
	2.2.2 Renewal Support.....	5
	2.2.3 Expenditures .....	5
	2.2.4 Pesticide Use .....	5
	2.2.5 Forest Operations Inspections .....	5
	2.2.6 Independent Forest Audit Action Plan Status Report.....	5
	2.2.7 Annual Report Summary Information.....	6
	2.3 Prescribed Burns .....	6
	2.4 Information Products.....	6
<b>3.0</b>	<b>ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL REPORTS7</b>	
	3.1 Implementation of Forest Operations - Trend Analysis .....	7
	3.1.1 Harvest Area.....	7
	3.1.2 Harvest Volume.....	8
	3.1.3 Renewal and Maintenance .....	8
	3.1.4 Harvest and Regeneration .....	8
	3.1.5 Forest Condition.....	8
	3.1.6 Wildlife Habitat .....	8
	3.1.7 Monitoring and Assessment .....	8
	3.2 Analysis of Forest Disturbances .....	9
	3.3 Analysis of Silvicultural Activities.....	9
	3.4 Review of Assumptions in Modelling.....	9
	3.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement .....	10
	3.5.1 Risk Assessment .....	11
	3.6 Determination of Sustainability.....	11
<b>4.0</b>	<b>SUBMISSION AND REVIEW .....</b>	<b>13</b>
	4.1 All Annual Reports .....	13
	4.2 Additional Requirements for the Year Five and Final Year Annual Reports.....	13



## 1.0 INTRODUCTION

This part of the manual contains the requirements for management unit annual reporting. An annual report will be prepared for each one-year period (i.e., April 1 to March 31) of the forest management plan (FMP), and will be submitted in accordance with the Forest Information Manual (FIM). The annual report will be certified by a registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author. In those cases where the original plan author of the FMP is no longer employed on the management unit, the sustainable forest licensee will assign the plan author.

Additional requirements for reports on plan implementation for specific management units are described in Part F of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM).

The FIM and applicable technical specification(s) will prescribe the format requirements for information products to be included in the annual report.

### Phase-in Provisions

Part E, Section 2.0 will apply as of the effective date of this FMPM except as follows:

- For Independent Forest Audit Action Plans prepared in response to Independent Forest Audits conducted prior to 2018, the process for reporting on the progress towards the completion of actions assigned under an action plan will be completed in accordance with the applicable Independent Forest Audit Process and Protocol.

Part E, Section 3.0 will apply as of the effective date of this FMPM to year five annual reports and final year annual reports for forest management plans prepared in accordance with this FMPM, except as follows:

- Analysis of regeneration reporting, may at the discretion of the plan author, be conducted in accordance with the previous approved FMP for the management unit;
- Analysis of harvest and regeneration trends may, at the discretion of the plan author, be conducted in accordance with the previous approved FMP for the management unit; and
- Analysis of silvicultural activities may, at the discretion of the plan author, be conducted in accordance with the previous approved FMP for the management unit

## **2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS**

### **2.1 Annual Report Text**

#### **2.1.1 Title and Certification Page**

The annual report title and certification page will be submitted to the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNR) in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

#### **2.1.2 Introduction**

A brief introduction is required to identify the purpose of the annual report, and identify if the annual report is a year five or final year annual report. The text will identify the relevant MNR field, district(s) and region(s), and the sustainable forest licensee.

#### **2.1.3 Discussion of Forest Operations**

A discussion of the implementation of road construction, harvest, and renewal and tending operations will address:

- (a) the progress towards achievement of planned levels of road construction and maintenance, and any related concerns;
- (b) the progress towards harvest of the planned harvest area and any related concerns that may have implications for wood supply;
- (c) the progress towards harvest of identified bridging harvest area from the previous FMP;
- (d) the progress towards achievement of planned levels of renewal and tending, and any related concerns ; and
- (e) the progress towards utilization of the volume associated with the planned harvest area and achievement of the planned volume for each mill, and any related concerns that may have implications for wood supply.

The text will include a description of any silvicultural trial areas undertaken.

#### 2.1.4 Monitoring and Assessment

The text will also include a discussion of:

- (a) any significant events (e.g., natural disturbances, markets, labour disruptions) that have affected the implementation of the FMP, and if applicable, the potential for a FMP extension or a contingency plan;
- (b) the monitoring of roads and water crossings, including the effectiveness of access controls, and any related concerns;
- (c) instances of non-compliance, including:
  - (i) the type(s) of non-compliance that occurred;
  - (ii) the cause(s) of those occurrences;
  - (iii) the remedies applied; and
  - (iv) how the sustainable forest licensee will improve the conduct of forest operations to minimize instances of non-compliance;
- (d) the monitoring of exceptions (Part B, Section 4.7.2), if any was undertaken, and any related concerns;
- (e) the progress towards completing the planned assessments of regeneration (i.e., establishment and performance), and any related concerns;
- (f) the progress towards completing the recovery of productive land (e.g., slash piles, chipper piles, landings, and roads decommissioned), and any related concerns; and
- (g) if applicable, the progress towards the completion of actions assigned under an action plan developed in accordance with the applicable Independent Forest Audit Process and Protocol (IFAPP)

### 2.2 Annual Report Information

#### 2.2.1 Wood Utilization

The annual report will include information on harvest volume utilized by licensee, harvest area, product, species and harvest volume, and information on harvest volume utilized by mill in accordance with the FIM.

2.2.2 Renewal Support

The annual report will include information on seed collection, seed use and trees planted in accordance with the FIM.

2.2.3 Expenditures

The annual report will include information on expenditures for renewal, tending and protection activities from the Forest Renewal Trust, Special Purpose Account, and Forestry Futures Trust in accordance with the FIM.

2.2.4 Pesticide Use

The annual report will include information for ground and aerial pesticide projects conducted during the current year (i.e., the part of the calendar year immediately preceding the due date of the annual report), required by Ministry of the Environment, Conservation and Parks (MECP) in accordance with the FIM. If an incident occurred during the application of a pesticide, a description of the incident will be included in the annual report. If a complaint on a pesticide project has been received, a description of the details of the complaint will be included in the annual report.

If pesticide application operations occur or are anticipated to occur beyond the November 15 submission requirement of the annual report, an update to the annual report will be submitted as soon as possible.

2.2.5 Forest Operations Inspections

The annual report will include information that summarizes forest operations inspections in accordance with the FIM.

2.2.6 Independent Forest Audit Action Plan Status Report

The annual report will include information that summarizes the progress towards the completion of actions assigned under an action plan developed in accordance with the applicable Independent Forest Audit.

1  
2 **2.2.7 Annual Report Summary Information**  
3

4 Annual report summary information will be portrayed in accordance with the FIM.  
5  
6

7 **2.3 Prescribed Burns**  
8

9 Post-burn reports, as required by MNR's Prescribed Burn Manual, will be prepared and  
10 submitted with the annual report in accordance with the FIM.  
11  
12

13 **2.4 Information Products**  
14

15 The forest operations that were implemented during the year of the annual report will be  
16 provided in information products in accordance with the FIM, including;

- 17 (a) areas of harvest operations;  
18 (b) natural disturbances;  
19 (c) renewal and maintenance (i.e., tending and protection) operations;  
20 (d) roads and water crossings;  
21 (e) forestry aggregate pits;  
22 (f) wood storage yards; and  
23 (g) assessment of regeneration.  
24

25 Areas harvested in two passes will be reported in two annual reports. The first-pass harvest  
26 area will be reported as regular harvest area and will contribute to the achievement of available  
27 harvest area. The second-pass harvest area will be reported in a subsequent annual report and  
28 will not contribute to the achievement of the available harvest area.  
29

30 The report of natural disturbances will contain net natural disturbance areas for stand replacing  
31 events (e.g., fire, blowdown). The sustainable forest licensee will examine the gross natural  
32 disturbance area and determine the net natural disturbance area.  
33

34 Areas harvested under the selection silvicultural system that are predominantly non-  
35 commercial improvement cuts will be identified as natural under regeneration treatment.  
36

37 Areas planned for natural regeneration will normally be reported in the year that the  
38 disturbance (i.e., harvest, natural) occurred. If salvage harvest is being considered in areas of  
39 natural disturbance, reporting of natural regeneration may be delayed for one or two years.  
40

41 For stands that are not successfully established, the annual report text will describe any  
42 additional silvicultural treatments required and timing for the next assessment for  
43 establishment.

### **3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL REPORTS**

In addition to the requirements for all annual reports described in Part E, Section 2.0, the requirements described in this section will apply to the year five annual report and the annual report for the final year of implementation of the FMP.

Additional requirements for the year five and final year annual reports for the specific management units are described in Part F of the FMPM.

The year five annual report will include an assessment, analysis, and review of the implementation of the first five years of the FMP. The year five annual report will identify any significant events (e.g., natural disturbances, markets, labour disruptions) that have affected the achievement of objectives in the FMP. The year five annual report will provide conclusions and recommendations to be addressed in the preparation of the next FMP.

The annual report for the final year will update the assessment, analysis and review in the year five annual report to reflect the full implementation of the FMP.

#### **3.1 Implementation of Forest Operations - Trend Analysis**

The trends analysis information for the current FMP and the previous FMPs will be submitted in accordance with the FIM. This information and the associated analysis will replace the similarly required information in the applicable Independent Forest Audit Process and Protocol (IFAPP). Where the information is not available for an independent forest audit, the requirements of the IFAPP will apply.

##### **3.1.1 Harvest Area**

The annual report will include planned and actual harvest area information for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs (including any bridging areas). The trend analysis will discuss trends in harvest levels, the spatial distribution of harvested areas (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) for the current and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

The area of bridging operations identified in the current FMP will be reported, as harvested in the trend analysis. The areas of bridging will be reported as described in the FMP (e.g., in the year five or final year annual report of the current FMP).

1  
2 3.1.2 Harvest Volume  
3

4 The annual report will include information of planned and actual harvest volume for the current  
5 FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous  
6 FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.  
7

8  
9 3.1.3 Renewal and Maintenance  
10

11 The annual report will include information of planned and actual renewal, tending and  
12 protection area for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss  
13 trends for the current and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of  
14 objectives.  
15

16  
17 3.1.4 Harvest and Regeneration  
18

19 The annual report will include information that summarizes areas of harvest and regeneration  
20 for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends for the  
21 current and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.  
22

23  
24 3.1.5 Forest Condition  
25

26 The annual report will include information of forest condition for the current FMP and the  
27 previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous FMPs, and  
28 any implications on the achievement of objectives.  
29

30  
31 3.1.6 Wildlife Habitat  
32

33 The annual report will include information indicating the amount of wildlife habitat for the  
34 current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and  
35 previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.  
36

37  
38 3.1.7 Monitoring and Assessment  
39

40 The annual report will include a summary of the discussions of the monitoring and assessment  
41 program (Part E, Section 2.1.4) from the annual reports, and assess progress made in  
42 implementing the planned program. Implications on the achievement of objectives will be  
43 discussed.  
44

### **3.2 Analysis of Forest Disturbances**

The annual report text will describe any implications of the area harvested and new natural disturbances on the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape pattern. Recommendations to be considered in the planning of future harvest areas will be documented.

### **3.3 Analysis of Silvicultural Activities**

An analysis of silvicultural activities will be prepared by a registered professional forester and documented in the text of the annual report.

The analysis will include a discussion of:

- (a) planned vs. actual silvicultural activities and the identification of significant variances;
- (b) planned vs. actual silvicultural expenditures, and the identification of significant variances;
- (c) planned vs. target forest units and any implications to forest level objectives;
- (d) planned vs. target yields and any implications to forest level objectives;
- (e) the effectiveness of SGRs; and
- (f) the assessment of regeneration performance.

The analysis will include conclusions and recommended changes for consideration in the determination of future silvicultural activities and expenditures, and the continued use of effective SGRs and yield predictions. The analysis will also document how implications to forest level objectives will be considered in future annual work schedules.

### **3.4 Review of Assumptions in Modelling**

In the preparation of a FMP, the development of the LTMD for the forest is based on a number of model assumptions (Part A, Section 1.2.4). The trend analysis for the implementation of forest operations (Part E, Section 3.1) and the analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3) will be reviewed. The text will discuss and compare assumptions and projections in the model with actual operations and results as reported in annual reports. Any issues identified with model assumptions, and conclusions and recommendations for modifications or refinements for the next FMP, will be documented in the text of the annual report.



### 3.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement

An assessment of the achievement of management objectives in the FMP will be documented in the text of the annual report. The assessment of information provided in all of the annual reports for the current FMP will be considered. The independent forest audit action plan, and progress towards the completion of assigned actions as reported in accordance with Part E, Section 2.1.4 or reported on in accordance with the applicable Independent Forest Audit Process and Protocol will be considered when assessing objective achievement.

A summary of the assessment of objective achievement will be reported in accordance with the FIM.

The assessment will examine management objectives, indicators and targets that were identified in the FMP for assessment at year five and the final year of implementation of the FMP. The assessment will consider and the text will discuss the following:

- (a) What is the difference between the target and the actual level achieved, and does the difference have implications on sustainability?
- (b) Has the target been achieved, or is progress being made on achievement of the target?
- (c) Is the difference a result of inaccurate predictions because of modeling assumptions and inputs?
- (d) Is the difference a result of unforeseen circumstances?
- (e) Do the differences infer that the modeling assumptions require modification to better represent the local forest?
- (f) Do the levels of objective achievement suggest a need to change objectives or make adjustments to the LTMD?

For appropriate management objectives in the FMP that are directly associated with one of the four categories of objectives required by the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994* (CFSA) the assessment will consider and the text will discuss:

- (a) Forest Diversity
  - (i) Was there a substantive change in forest structure and composition?
  - (ii) Do the forest condition trends indicate progress towards the desired forest condition?
  - (iii) Are the landscape pattern target(s) being achieved?
  - (iv) Are there any factors that may be interfering with forest diversity objective achievement?
- (b) Social and Economic
  - (i) Does the information for wood utilization by licensee and mill of this annual report and equivalent information in previous annual reports for

the FMP indicate that the available harvest area and associated volume are being fully utilized?

(ii) Do the trends in forest condition indicate a concern with the area available for forest management?

(iii) Did implementation of the FMP contribute to mill and community stability?

(iv) Were the desired benefit targets achieved?

(c) Forest Cover

(i) Were the habitat targets for selected wildlife species achieved?

(ii) Do the trends indicate a concern with the area of habitat for any selected wildlife species?

(d) Silviculture

(i) Were all planned renewal operations undertaken?

(ii) Did renewal treatments produce the anticipated results?

(iii) Did the forest grow and develop as projected?

If targets were not achieved, the assessment will provide reasons, a discussion of the management implications, and recommendations for future planning.

### 3.5.1 Risk Assessment

The risks investigated with implementation of the LTMD (Part B, Section 3.7.6) will be assessed to identify any implications on objective achievement. A discussion of any management implications and recommendations for future planning will be documented in the text of the annual report.

## 3.6 Determination of Sustainability

The determination of sustainability in the year five and final year annual reports will conclude whether the implementation of the FMP has provided for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit, through a collective assessment of objective achievement. The determination of sustainability will conclude whether a balance of social, economic and environmental objectives is being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

The determination of sustainability will consider the following questions:

(a) are the levels of objective achievement within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators?

(b) is there a relationship between the objectives that are not within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators (e.g., are the levels of objective achievement related to a common forest type, or a particular CFSA objective category (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1))?

- (c) are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels related to limitations imposed by the current forest condition?
- (d) are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels related to balancing the achievement of multiple objectives?
- (e) are actual operations and results as reported in annual reports consistent with assumptions and projections in the model and FMP?
- (f) have the components of the independent forest audit action plan that pertain to objective achievement and sustainability been implemented?

Documentation of the determination of sustainability will be included in the text of the annual report. The documentation will:

- (a) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives and provide rationale for any management objectives where desirable levels are not achieved; and
- (b) provide a conclusion as to whether the implementation of planned operations has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

## **4.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW**

### **4.1 All Annual Reports**

Before the submission of the annual report to MNRF, the plan author will ensure the annual report:

- (a) is complete and meets the content requirements of the FMPM and the FIM;
- (b) calculations are correct;
- (c) is structured consistent with Part E of this manual;
- (d) is edited for ease of understanding; and
- (e) contains page and line numbers.

The plan author will submit the annual report to MNRF by November 15 in accordance with the requirements of the FIM and Part E of this manual.

MNRF will have the opportunity to review the annual report for completeness and accuracy. If a review is completed, a list of required modifications, and rationale for those modifications will be prepared, and certified by an MNRF registered professional forester. Under the authority of the district manager, MNRF will provide the results of the review to the plan author within 30 days of receipt of the annual report. The plan author will address the comments and provide the MNRF with documentation on how the comments have been addressed, and if necessary, a revised annual report will be submitted by February 15 of the following year.

The plan author will present the completed annual report to the local citizens' committee (LCC), in a manner determined by the MNRF district manager in consultation with the committee.

The annual report will remain available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the annual report.

### **4.2 Additional Requirements for the Year Five and Final Year Annual Reports**

MNRF will review the year five and final year annual reports, over a period of 30 days commencing November 15, or on the submission date if received after November 15. A list of required modifications, and rationale for those modifications will be prepared, and certified by an MNRF registered professional forester. The MNRF district manager and regional resources manager will forward the list of required alterations, if any, to the plan author. The plan author will address the required alterations and provide the MNRF district manager and regional resources manager with documentation on how the alterations have been addressed, and if

1 necessary, a revised annual report will be submitted by February 15, or 60 days from the  
2 receipt of the MNRF required alterations.

3  
4 Within 15 days of the required alterations being addressed to the satisfaction of the MNRF  
5 district manager and regional resources manager, the MNRF district manager and regional  
6 resources manager will sign the annual report - Title, Certification and Approval Page and  
7 recommend the annual report for approval by the MNRF regional director. The FIM prescribes  
8 the format for the Title, Certification and Approval Page, and provides direction for signing  
9 approval pages associated with electronically submitted annual reports.

10  
11 If requested by the MNRF regional director, the plan author and representatives of the planning  
12 team, including the representative of the LCC, will make a presentation of the annual report to  
13 the MNRF regional director. The MNRF district manager, MNRF regional resources manager,  
14 and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee may attend the presentation.

15  
16 If the MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF district manager's and regional resources  
17 manager's recommendations, the MNRF regional director will approve the annual report,  
18 normally by March 1. The MNRF regional director will sign the year five and final year annual  
19 reports – Title and Certification Page submitted by the plan author.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>PART F – MANAGEMENT UNIT SPECIFIC DIRECTION.....</b>	<b>4</b>
Phase-in Provisions .....	4
<b>WHITEFEATHER FOREST .....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>PART A - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS.....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN.....</b>	<b>5</b>
1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning.....	5
1.1.1.2 Role of Pikangikum Elders.....	5
1.1.2 Planning Team.....	5
1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference .....	5
1.1.2.2 Project Plan .....	6
1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information.....	6
1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction.....	6
1.1.8.14 Pikangikum Indigenous Knowledge .....	6
1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....	7
1.2.1 Introduction.....	7
1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors .....	7
1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations.....	8
1.3.1 Introduction .....	8
1.3.6 Roads.....	8
<b>3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING .....</b>	<b>9</b>
3.1 Introduction .....	9
3.1.1 Role of Pikangikum Elders.....	9
3.2 Planning Team.....	9
3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning.....	9
3.6 Documentation .....	10
3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report .....	10
<b>PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS.....</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION .....</b>	<b>10</b>
3.7 Long-Term Management Direction.....	10
<b>4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS.....</b>	<b>10</b>
4.1 Introduction .....	10
4.5 Roads.....	10
4.7 Monitoring and Assessment .....	11
4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections .....	11
4.7.2 Exceptions .....	11
4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration.....	11
<b>6.0 DOCUMENTATION .....</b>	<b>11</b>
6.1 Supplementary Documentation.....	11
<b>PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS .....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>1.0 INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>12</b>

1	<b>3.0</b>	<b>ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL</b>	
2		<b>REPORTS .....</b>	<b>12</b>
3	3.1	Implementation of Forest Operations - Trend Analysis .....	12
4	3.1.6	Wildlife Habitat .....	12
5	3.5	Assessment of Objective Achievement .....	12
6	<b>5.0</b>	<b>REPORTS TO PIKANGIKUM FIRST NATION .....</b>	<b>13</b>
7	5.1	Introduction .....	13
8	5.2	Annual Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation .....	13
9	5.3	Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation .....	13
10	5.3.1	Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Five .....	14
11	5.3.2	Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Eight.....	14
12	5.4	Final Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation .....	15
13		<b>CAT-SLATE FOREST .....</b>	<b>16</b>
14		<b>PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS .....</b>	<b>16</b>
15	<b>1.0</b>	<b>PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN .....</b>	<b>16</b>
16	1.1	Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning .....	16
17	1.1.1.2	Role of Elders .....	16
18	1.1.2	Planning Team.....	16
19	1.1.2.1	Terms of Reference.....	16
20	1.1.2.2	Project Plan .....	17
21	1.1.8	Assembly and Update of Background Information.....	17
22	1.1.8.1	Sources of Direction.....	17
23	1.1.8.14	Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous Knowledge .....	17
24	1.2	Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....	18
25	1.2.6	Primary Road Corridors.....	18
26	1.3	Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations .....	18
27	1.3.6	Roads.....	18
28	<b>3.0</b>	<b>FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN</b>	
29		<b>FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING.....</b>	<b>20</b>
30	3.1	Introduction .....	20
31	3.1.1	Role of Cat Lake and Slate Falls Elders.....	20
32	3.2	Planning Team .....	20
33	3.4	Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management	
34		Planning .....	20
35	3.6	Documentation .....	21
36	3.6.1	First Nation and Métis Background Information Report .....	21
37		<b>PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS .....</b>	<b>21</b>
38	<b>4.0</b>	<b>PLANNED OPERATIONS .....</b>	<b>21</b>
39	4.5	Roads.....	21
40	4.7	Monitoring and Assessment .....	21
41	4.7.1	Forest Operations Inspections.....	21
42	4.7.2	Exceptions .....	21
43	4.7.3	Assessment of Regeneration .....	22
44	<b>6.0</b>	<b>DOCUMENTATION.....</b>	<b>22</b>

1	6.1	Supplementary Documentation.....	22
2		<b>PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS .....</b>	<b>22</b>
3	<b>1.0</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>22</b>
4	<b>5.0</b>	<b>REPORTS TO CAT LAKE FIRST NATION AND SLATE FALLS NATION.....</b>	<b>22</b>
5	5.1	Introduction .....	22
6	5.2	Annual Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation .....	23
7	5.3	Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation .....	23
8	5.3.1	Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Five.....	23
9	5.3.2	Summary Report on Plan Implementation - Year Eight.....	24
10	5.4	Final Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation.....	25
11			



## **PART F – MANAGEMENT UNIT SPECIFIC DIRECTION**

Part F describes requirements that are in addition to those described in Parts A, B, and E of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM) for specific management units.

Section numbers of Part F correspond to the related sections of Parts A, B and E. New section numbers are introduced in Part F if no such related section exists.

### **Phase-in Provisions**

The requirements of Part F will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

## **WHITEFEATHER FOREST**

### **PART A - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS**

#### **1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

##### **1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning**

###### **1.1.1.2 Role of Pikangikum Elders**

For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum First Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest, and includes provision of strategic advice, communication with the Pikangikum community, and building Pikangikum community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Pikangikum's customary decision-making approach, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Pikangikum customary stewardship traditions.

Pikangikum First Nation elders will be represented through the Whitefeather Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Whitefeather Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Pikangikum First Nation representation on the planning team and the Local Citizens Committee (LCC). Communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group does not relieve MNRF of the obligation to consult with Pikangikum First Nation.

###### **1.1.2 Planning Team**

For the Whitefeather Forest, the MNRF district manager will offer an opportunity to Pikangikum First Nation to select one or more representatives to participate on the planning team. If the community chooses to participate on the planning team, the representative will be identified by the community's leadership.

###### **1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference**

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team terms of reference will also contain:

- 1 (f) a description of the process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather  
2 Steering Group, to seek their guidance (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).  
3  
4

5 1.1.2.2 Project Plan  
6

7 For the Whitefeather Forest, the project plan will describe responsibilities and specific tasks  
8 that are assigned to the representatives of Pikangikum First Nation on the planning team.  
9  
10

11 1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information  
12

13 For the Whitefeather Forest, the background information that will be available for the period  
14 of forest management plan (FMP) preparation will also include:

- 15 (o) Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.  
16  
17

18 1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction  
19

20 For the Whitefeather Forest, the documents that provide direction and guidance for  
21 decision-making will also include:

- 22 (p) the existing approved land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest (Keeping  
23 the Land: A Land Use Strategy for the Whitefeather Forest and Adjacent  
24 Areas), or its successor.  
25  
26

27 1.1.8.14 Pikangikum Indigenous Knowledge  
28

29 For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge will be part of the  
30 background information that will be available for use in planning, to support the  
31 incorporation of Pikangikum customary stewardship practices. Pikangikum Indigenous  
32 knowledge is defined as the integrated body of wisdom, values, perceptions and teachings  
33 that emerges out of the practices of everyday life of Pikangikum people.  
34

35 Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge speaks to a range of subject matters, including but not  
36 limited to: geography, the locations of natural resource features and cultural heritage sites,  
37 ecosystem dynamics, and teachings that direct certain kinds of behaviour, including  
38 appropriate ways of relating to other beings on the land. Some of this knowledge will be  
39 documented in the values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and some may be  
40 documented in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section  
41 3.6.1).  
42

Many aspects of Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge are more conceptual in nature, and are intimately tied to language. Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge is transmitted largely through demonstration on the land, and through oral traditions and teachings. To ensure Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge is available for use in planning, another source of information will be the Pikangikum people, particularly the elders.

The approach to incorporating Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning will be described in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

## **1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction**

### **1.2.1 Introduction**

For the Whitefeather Forest, in the development of the long-term management direction (LTMD), the planning team will seek to provide a continuous supply (i.e. spatially and temporally) of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest. The planning team will be guided by MNRF policy direction, and the strategic land use direction for caribou in *Keeping the Land*, as amended from time to time.

A description of how the LTMD provides for a continuous supply of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the FMP will contain an updated description of how the LTMD provides for a continuous supply of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest.

### **1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors**

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team will plan primary road corridors for the ten-year period of the FMP through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be guided by the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary road corridors for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be prepared. The description will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

### 1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations

#### 1.3.1 Introduction

For the Whitefeather Forest, in the planning of forest operations for the ten-year period, the planning team will seek to provide a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest. The planning team will be guided by MNRF policy direction, and the strategic land use direction for caribou in *Keeping the Land*, as amended from time to time.

A description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide for a continuous supply of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the FMP will contain an updated description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide for a continuous supply of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest.

#### 1.3.6 Roads

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team will plan primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be guided by the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the FMP will contain an updated description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

## **3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING**

### **3.1 Introduction**

#### **3.1.1 Role of Pikangikum Elders**

For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum First Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest and includes provision of strategic advice, communication with the Pikangikum community, and building Pikangikum community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Pikangikum's customary decision-making approach and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Pikangikum customary stewardship traditions.

Pikangikum First Nation elders will be represented through the Whitefeather Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Whitefeather Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Pikangikum First Nation representation on the planning team and the LCC. Communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group does not relieve MNRF of the obligation to consult with Pikangikum First Nation.

### **3.2 Planning Team**

For the Whitefeather Forest, the MNRF district manager will offer an opportunity to Pikangikum First Nation to select one or more representatives to participate on the planning team. If the community chooses to participate on the planning team, the representative will be identified by the community's leadership.

### **3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning**

For the Whitefeather Forest, the consultation approach for Pikangikum First Nation will provide an opportunity for Pikangikum First Nation to build community consensus prior to each formal public consultation opportunity, and prior to any corresponding consultation

opportunity that may be developed for an adjacent First Nation or Métis community. The consultation approach will describe the approach to incorporating Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning and an appropriate means for documentation of Pikangikum community input.

### **3.6 Documentation**

#### **3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report**

For the Whitefeather Forest, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will also include:

- (e) a description of the approach to incorporating Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning.

## **PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

### **3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**

#### **3.7 Long-Term Management Direction**

A description of how the LTMD provides for a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

### **4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS**

#### **4.1 Introduction**

A description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide for a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

#### **4.5 Roads**

A description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational road boundaries for the ten-year period, has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land*

to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

## **4.7 Monitoring and Assessment**

### **4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections**

For the Whitefeather Forest, the ten-year compliance strategy will also describe the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

### **4.7.2 Exceptions**

For the Whitefeather Forest, the monitoring program for exceptions will also include:

- (e) the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

### **4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration**

For the Whitefeather Forest, the monitoring program for the assessment of regeneration will also include the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community members to gather and record Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

## **6.0 DOCUMENTATION**

### **6.1 Supplementary Documentation**

For the Whitefeather Forest, the supplementary documentation of the FMP will also include:

- (o) a description of how the LTMD provides for a continuous supply of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest;
- (p) a description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide for a continuous supply of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest;
- (q) a description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational road boundaries for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in Keeping the Land; and



- (r) the objective in Keeping the Land to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

## **PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS**

### **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

For the Whitefeather Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Pikangikum First Nation. Part E, Section 6.0 describes the requirements for the reports.

### **3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL REPORTS**

#### **3.1 Implementation of Forest Operations - Trend Analysis**

##### **3.1.6 Wildlife Habitat**

For the Whitefeather Forest, caribou (boreal population) will be one of the wildlife species included in the analysis of wildlife habitat. The analysis of the information will include a discussion of trends for caribou (boreal population) habitat, and any implications for the achievement of the management objective for caribou (boreal population) habitat in the current FMP.

#### **3.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement**

For the Whitefeather Forest, the management objective for caribou (boreal population) habitat in the current FMP will be one of the objectives included in the assessment of objective achievement. The summary of the assessment of objective achievement in the text of the management unit annual report will include a discussion of the achievement of the habitat target for caribou (boreal population) in the current FMP, and any concerns arising from the analysis of trends for caribou (boreal population) habitat (Part E, Section 3.1.6).

## **5.0 REPORTS TO PIKANGIKUM FIRST NATION**

### **5.1 Introduction**

For the Whitefeather Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Pikangikum First Nation. Those reports include:

- (a) an annual report on FMP implementation each year (Part F, Section 5.2);
- (b) a summary report on FMP implementation in each of the fifth and eighth years (Part F, Section 5.3); and
- (c) a final summary report on FMP implementation in the year after completion of plan implementation (Part F, Section 5.4).

### **5.2 Annual Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation**

In November of each year, the sustainable forest licensee will prepare an annual report on FMP implementation for the Pikangikum Chief and Council and the Whitefeather Steering Group. The management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of each year will serve as a source of information.

The contents of the report will include:

- (a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Pikangikum First Nation during the year, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;
- (b) the amount of area harvested during the year;
- (c) the amount of area site prepared, renewed and tended during the year; and
- (d) the names of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community members who participated in monitoring of FMP implementation during the year.

The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to the Pikangikum Chief and Council and the Whitefeather Steering Group, which may involve an oral presentation. The information products in the management unit annual report for the applicable year of FMP implementation will be available to assist with communication of the report.

### **5.3 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation**

In addition to the annual report on FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare summary reports for Pikangikum First Nation in each of the fifth and eighth years.

1  
2 5.3.1 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Five  
3

4 In the fifth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance  
5 of MNRF, will prepare a summary report on FMP implementation for Pikangikum First  
6 Nation.

7  
8 The contents of the report will include:

- 9 (a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of  
10 Pikangikum First Nation to date, including employment in forest operations,  
11 wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;  
12 (b) identification of the Pikangikum First Nation traplines affected by forest  
13 operations to date;  
14 (c) the amount of forest operations to date, including:  
15 (i) kilometres of road construction;  
16 (ii) area of harvest;  
17 (iii) area of site preparation, by treatment type (e.g., prescribed burn,  
18 mechanical, herbicides);  
19 (iv) area of renewal, by treatment type (e.g., natural, seeding, planting);  
20 (v) area of tending, by treatment type (e.g., manual, herbicides); and  
21 (vi) area of insect pest management, by treatment type (e.g., Bt);  
22 (d) identification of the roads and road networks that have controls on public  
23 access to date, and the roads and road networks that have been  
24 decommissioned to date;  
25 (e) a summary of the participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers  
26 and other community members in monitoring of FMP implementation to  
27 date, including a summary of the information recorded by Pikangikum First  
28 Nation participants; and  
29 (f) a summary of the forest management-related educational opportunities that  
30 have been provided for Pikangikum First Nation (e.g., training, tours), and a  
31 summary of the participation of members of Pikangikum First Nation in those  
32 educational opportunities.  
33

34 The report will be made available to Pikangikum First Nation.  
35  
36

37 5.3.2 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Eight  
38

39 In the eighth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the  
40 assistance of MNRF, will prepare an updated summary report on FMP implementation for  
41 Pikangikum First Nation. The year five management unit annual report that the sustainable  
42 forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of the sixth year of FMP implementation will  
43 serve as a source of information.

1  
2 The report will update the information that was included in the summary report on FMP  
3 implementation – year five. In addition, the report will include:

- 4       (a)     a summary of how FMP implementation to date has contributed to the  
5               achievement of the management objectives of the FMP, and achievement of  
6               the goals and objectives in *Keeping the Land*; and  
7       (b)     a summary of the analysis of renewal and tending activities, and the  
8               recommended changes to improve the effectiveness of renewal and tending  
9               operations (Part E, Section 3.3).

10  
11 The report will be made available to Pikangikum First Nation in the early stages of the  
12 planning of the next FMP, which begins in year eight. The information products in the year  
13 five management unit annual report will also be available.

#### 14 15 16 **5.4     Final Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation**

17  
18 In the year after completion of FMP implementation (i.e., year eleven), the sustainable  
19 forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare a final summary report on FMP  
20 implementation for Pikangikum First Nation. The final year management unit annual report  
21 that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of the first year after  
22 completion of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.

23  
24 The report will update the information and summaries that were included in the summary  
25 report on FMP implementation – year eight, to reflect the full implementation of the FMP.

26  
27 The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to  
28 the Pikangikum Chief and Council, the Whitefeather Steering Group and the Pikangikum  
29 community. The information products in the final year management unit annual report will  
30 be available to assist with communication of the report.

## **CAT-SLATE FOREST**

### **PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS**

#### **1.0 PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

##### **1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning**

###### **1.1.1.2 Role of Elders**

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will play a guiding role in in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use plan for the forest. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Cat Lake First Nation’s and Slate Falls Nation’s customary decision-making approaches, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on customary stewardship traditions.

Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will be represented through the Cat-Slate Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Cat-Slate Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation representation on the planning team and the LCC. Communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group does not relieve MNRF of the obligation to consult with Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

###### **1.1.2 Planning Team**

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will each have representation on the planning team. The leadership of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will identify one or more representatives to participate on the planning team.

###### **1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference**

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the planning team terms of reference will also contain:

- (f) a description of the process for planning team communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group to seek their guidance (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

1  
2 1.1.2.2 Project Plan  
3

4 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the project plan will describe responsibilities and specific tasks that  
5 are assigned to the representatives of Cat-Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation on the  
6 planning team.  
7

8  
9 1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information  
10

11 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the background information that will be available for the period of  
12 FMP preparation will also include:

- 13 (o) Cat-Lake First Nation's and Slate Falls Nation's Indigenous knowledge.  
14  
15

16 1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction  
17

18 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-  
19 making will also include:

- 20 (k) the existing approved land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest ("Niigaan Bimaadiziwin"  
21 – A Future Life), or its successor.  
22  
23

24 1.1.8.14 Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous Knowledge  
25

26 For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge  
27 will be part of the background information that will be available for use in planning to  
28 support the incorporation of their customary stewardship practices. Cat Lake and Slate Falls  
29 Indigenous knowledge is defined as the integrated body of wisdom, values, perceptions and  
30 teachings that emerges out of the practices of everyday life of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate  
31 Falls Nation people, as the case may be.  
32

33 Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge speaks to a range of subject matters,  
34 including but not limited to: geography, the locations of natural resource features and  
35 cultural heritage sites, ecosystem dynamics, and teachings that direct certain kinds of  
36 behaviour, including appropriate ways of relating to other beings on the land. Some of this  
37 knowledge will be documented in the values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and some  
38 may be documented in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A,  
39 Section 3.6.1).  
40

41 Many aspects of Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge are more conceptual in  
42 nature, and are intimately tied to language. Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge is  
43 transmitted largely through demonstration on the land, and through oral traditions and

1 teachings. To ensure Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge is available for use in  
2 planning, another source of information will be the Cat Lake and Slate Falls people,  
3 particularly the elders.

4  
5 The approach to incorporating Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous  
6 knowledge in forest management planning will be described in the First Nation and Métis  
7 Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

## 10 **1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction**

### 13 **1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors**

14  
15 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the planning team will plan primary road corridors for the ten-year  
16 period of the FMP through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be  
17 guided by the direction for access development and management as set out in “Niigaan  
18 Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to  
19 maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

20  
21 A description of how the planning of primary road corridors for the ten-year period has  
22 addressed the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin”  
23 – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain  
24 remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest, will be prepared. The description  
25 will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

## 28 **1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations**

### 31 **1.3.6 Roads**

32  
33 For the Cat-Slate Forest, the planning team will plan primary, branch and operational roads  
34 for the ten-year period through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will  
35 be guided by the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan  
36 Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to  
37 maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

38  
39 A description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year  
40 period has addressed the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan  
41 Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to  
42 maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest, will be prepared. The  
43 supplementary documentation of the FMP will contain an updated description of how the  
44 planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period has addressed the

- 1 direction for access development and management in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future
- 2 Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain remoteness as a
- 3 defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.



## **3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING**

### **3.1 Introduction**

#### **3.1.1 Role of Cat Lake and Slate Falls Elders**

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest, and include the provision for strategic advice, communication with the Cat Lake and Slate Falls communities, and building Cat Lake and Slate Falls community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of the Cat Lake's and Slate Falls 'customary decision-making approach, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Cat Lake and Slate Falls customary stewardship traditions.

Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will be represented through the Cat-Slate Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Cat-Slate Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation representation on the planning team and the LCC. Communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group does not relieve MNRF of the obligation to consult with Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

### **3.2 Planning Team**

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will each have representation on the planning team. The leadership of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will identify one or more representatives to participate on the planning team.

### **3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning**

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the consultation approach for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will provide an opportunity for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation to build community consensus prior to each formal public consultation opportunity, and prior to any corresponding consultation opportunity that may be developed for an adjacent First Nation and Métis community. The consultation approach will describe the approach to

incorporating Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning and an appropriate means for documentation of Cat Lake and Slate Falls community input.

### **3.6 Documentation**

#### **3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report**

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will also include:

- (e) a description of the approach to incorporating Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning.

## **PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

### **4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS**

#### **4.5 Roads**

A description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational road boundaries for the ten-year period, has addressed the direction for access development and management in the community based land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest and the objective to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest, will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

#### **4.7 Monitoring and Assessment**

##### **4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections**

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the ten-year compliance strategy will also describe the opportunities for participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge.

##### **4.7.2 Exceptions**

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the monitoring program for exceptions will also include:

- (e) the opportunities for participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge.

#### 4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration

For the Cat-slate Forest, the monitoring program for the assessment of regeneration will also include the opportunities for participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Indigenous knowledge.

## 6.0 DOCUMENTATION

### 6.1 Supplementary Documentation

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the supplementary documentation of the FMP will also include:

- (o) a description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational road boundaries for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in the community based land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest; and
- (p) the objective in the community based land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

## PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

### 1.0 INTRODUCTION

For the Cat-Slate Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. Part E, Section 6.0 describes the requirements for the reports.

## 5.0 REPORTS TO CAT LAKE FIRST NATION AND SLATE FALLS NATION

### 5.1 Introduction

For the Cat-Slate Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. Those reports include:

- (a) an annual report on FMP implementation each year (Part F, Section 5.2);

- (b) a summary report on FMP implementation in each of the fifth and eighth years (Part F, Section 5.3); and
- (c) a final summary report on FMP implementation in the year after completion of plan implementation (Part F, Section 5.4).

## **5.2 Annual Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation**

In November of each year, the sustainable forest licensee will prepare an annual report on FMP implementation for the Cat Lake First Nation Chief and Council and Slate Falls Nation Chief and Council and the Cat-Slate Steering Group. The management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of each year will serve as a source of information.

The contents of the report will include:

- (a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation during the year, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;
- (b) the amount of area harvested during the year;
- (c) the amount of area site prepared, renewed and tended during the year; and
- (d) the names of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers and other community members who participated in monitoring of FMP implementation during the year.

The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to the Cat Lake First Nation Chief and Council and Slate Falls Nation Chief and Council and the Cat-Slate Steering Group, which may involve an oral presentation. The information products in the management unit annual report for the applicable year of FMP implementation will be available to assist with communication of the report.

## **5.3 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation**

In addition to the annual report on FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare summary reports for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation in each of the fifth and eighth years.

### **5.3.1 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Five**

In the fifth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare a summary report on FMP implementation for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

The contents of the report will include:

- (a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation to date, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;
- (b) identification of the Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation traplines affected by forest operations to date;
- (c) the amount of forest operations to date, including:
  - (vii) kilometres of road construction;
  - (viii) area of harvest;
  - (ix) area of site preparation, by treatment type (e.g., prescribed burn, mechanical, herbicides);
  - (x) area of renewal, by treatment type (e.g., natural, seeding, planting);
  - (xi) area of tending, by treatment type (e.g. manual, herbicides); and
  - (xii) area of insect pest management, by treatment type (e.g., Bt);
- (d) identification of the roads and road networks that have controls on public access to date, and the roads and road networks that have been decommissioned to date;
- (e) a summary of the participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers and other community members in monitoring of plan implementation to date, including a summary of the information recorded by Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation participants; and
- (f) a summary of the forest management-related educational opportunities that have been provided for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation (e.g., training, tours), and a summary of the participation of members of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation in those educational opportunities.

The report will be made available to Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

### 5.3.2 Summary Report on Plan Implementation - Year Eight

In the eighth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare an updated summary report on FMP implementation for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. The year five management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of the sixth year of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.

The report will update the information that was included in the summary report on FMP implementation – year five. In addition, the report will include:

- 1           (a)     a summary of how FMP implementation to date has contributed to the  
2                   achievement of the management objectives of the FMP, and achievement of  
3                   the goals and objectives in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life; and  
4           (b)     a summary of the analysis of renewal and tending activities, and the  
5                   recommended changes to improve the effectiveness of renewal and tending  
6                   operations (Part E, Section 3.3).  
7

8     The report will be made available to Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation in the early  
9     stages of the planning of the next FMP, which begins in year eight. The information products  
10    in the year five management unit annual report will also be available.  
11  
12

#### 13   **5.4     Final Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation** 14

15    In the year after completion of FMP implementation (i.e., year eleven), the sustainable  
16    forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare a final summary report on plan  
17    implementation for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. The final year management  
18    unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of the  
19    first year after completion of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.  
20

21    The report will update the information and summaries that were included in the summary  
22    report on FMP implementation – year eight, to reflect the full implementation of the FMP.  
23

24    The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to  
25    the Cat Lake First Nation Chief and Council and Slate Falls Nation Chief and Council, the Cat-  
26    Slate Steering Group and the Cat Lake and Slate Falls communities. The information products  
27    in the final year management unit annual report will be available to assist with  
28    communication of the report.  
29

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

Appendix I: Social and Economic Description ..... 2

Appendix II: Primary Roads Supplementary Documentation Form..... 5

Appendix III: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form..... 8

Appendix IV: Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits ..... 12

Appendix V: Operational Standards for Wood Storage Yards ..... 14

## **Appendix I: Social and Economic Description**

### **Part 1: Demographic Profiles**

The profile of each community identified in Part B Section 2.2.1 will contain the following data:

- (a) population and labour force;
- (b) community diversity and official language (diversity is an indicator of community resilience);
- (c) household characteristics;
- (d) individual income by gender;
- (e) household income;
- (f) educational accomplishment (education is also an indicator of community resilience); and
- (g) labour force dependency ratios.

The standardized demographic profile is derived from Statistics Canada census data, and the most recent census data that are available are often several years old or more. The Ministry of Energy Northern Development and Mines, Regional Economic Development Branch is also a source for community profile information. Other community data can be found on the Statistics Canada web site (<http://www.statcan.ca>) under community profiles. A planning team representative(s) is required to contact economic development officers in the communities identified in the social and economic context for the management unit, and ask them if they would review the profile, update it where they can, and add further relevant insight. Additional or updated information will be added to the profile in the most reader-friendly format, which may simply be as text.

### **Part 2: Description of the Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest**

Information describing the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest provides the baseline information on the social and economic environment affected by management decisions in a FMP. The information in the description will be considered in the development of management objectives and the long-term management direction, and the planning of forest operations.

The planning team will collect and summarize information described in this section, where this information is available. The availability of this information will vary between management units. Sources of this information include government, the private sector and members of the public. Information may also be available from websites, reports, databases or other media. The sources of information used will be referenced in the description. If businesses are not willing to disclose information, the planning team will document, in the description, the efforts made to obtain the information.



The description should be organized by sector.

#### ***Forestry and Wood Products***

- (a) List the holders of overlapping licences and forest resource licences, and describe wood supply commitments and wood supply competitive process conditional offers of wood supply that remain in force.
- (b) For each year over the past ten years, show the volume of wood from the forest, by conifer, intolerant hardwood, and tolerant hardwood, utilized by each receiving mill.
- (c) Describe the destinations of sawmill residues (e.g., chips, sawdust) produced by local sawmills that use wood from the forest for secondary products.
- (d) For the mills that receive a substantial amount of wood from the management unit, describe:
  - (i) the types of products made;
  - (ii) employment (including mills, woodlands, woodlands contractors);
  - (iii) ownership of the mill over the past ten years;
  - (iv) recent major upgrades; and
  - (v) any events such as strikes, fires, etc that caused significant downtime.
- (e) Provide, on an annual basis for each of the last ten years, the actual harvest volume (i.e., merchantable, and undersize and defect), the total amount of Crown timber charges paid (sub-divided by stumpage payments, payments to the forest renewal trust and payments to the forestry futures trust), and the average Crown timber charges paid per cubic metre.

#### ***Recreation and Tourism***

- (a) Describe the provincial parks and conservation reserves, within and adjacent to the management unit.
- (b) For each lodge within or adjacent to the management unit, list the name of the business, capacity, type of lodge (e.g., hunting/fishing, snowmobile), and number of outpost camps. Where possible, also provide, the occupancy levels, the location of origin of the clients, seasonality of operations, and other such relevant information. Discuss trends of interest. Also describe how the lodge can be accessed.
- (c) Where available, discuss the revenue generated from tourist lodges and employment (direct, indirect and induced).
- (d) Describe the amount of direct local employment in the sector, and provide a breakdown of the seasonality of this employment. Determine indirect and induced employment.
- (e) Describe the recreational facilities available on the management unit such as campgrounds, and trails for snowmobiles, all terrain vehicles, hiking, mountain biking, cross country skiing.

- 1  
2 (f) Describe Crown land recreation activities (e.g., hunting, fishing, Crown land  
3 camping, use of trails, snowmobiling, etc) on the unit.  
4 (g) Describe any enhancements to quality or capacity of tourism lodges made  
5 during the past ten years.  
6 (h) Describe any relevant tourism expenditure data, willingness to pay  
7 information, etc.  
8 (i) Describe any relevant commercial tourism activities on the unit that are not  
9 associated with lodges (e.g., ecotourism or adventure tourism), provide the  
10 number of clients such businesses bring to the forest, and their impact on the  
11 local and provincial economies.  
12 (j) Provide hunting and fishing data relevant to the management unit (e.g., the  
13 number of resident and non-resident licences issued).  
14 (k) Provide available data on use of Crown land within the management unit for  
15 recreation.  
16

17 ***Mining, Aggregate and Hydro Generation***  
18

- 19 (a) Describe any mining, aggregate and hydro facilities on or adjacent to the  
20 management unit. Where mining operations are found, describe the amount  
21 of mineral produced, reserve capacity, and expected mine life. Where  
22 available, discuss the revenue generated from the mine and employment  
23 (direct, indirect and induced). Discuss the economic contribution of mineral  
24 exploration activity on the unit.  
25 (b) Where aggregates are produced, describe the number of pits and the amount  
26 produced, as well as revenue and employment information where available.  
27 (c) Where hydro facilities are present, describe the employment and the  
28 economic impact of the operation on the local area.  
29

30 ***Traplines, Baitfish and Other***  
31

- 32 (a) Discuss the number of traplines on the management unit, the number of  
33 trappers and estimate the trapping revenue.  
34 (b) Describe the number of baitfish operations and their economic impact.  
35 (c) Indicate how many people are employed by the Ministry of Natural Resources  
36 and Forestry (MNRF) district office(s) associated with the management unit.  
37

**Appendix II: Primary Roads Supplementary Documentation Form**

Complete Part A, sections 1 to 6 for each new primary road that is required for the next 20 years, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.7.

Complete Part A, section 7 for each confirmed primary road corridor that is required for the next 20 years, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.7.

## **A: Primary Road Corridors**

Complete Part A for each new primary road.

### **ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER:**

#### **1. Alternative Corridors**

Complete this section prior to stage two of consultation.

Considerations which support the reasonable range of practical alternative corridors for analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.6):

#### **2. Environmental Analysis of Alternative Corridors**

Complete this section for each alternative corridor prior to stage two of consultation.

- (a) Identify (number) and portray each alternative corridor and provide a description at stage two and three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate information product in the draft and final plan;
- (b) Environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.6):
  - (i) discuss relative advantages and disadvantages of the alternative corridors;
  - (ii) identify use management strategy(s) and if the use management strategy(s) differ discuss the relative advantages and disadvantages of the alternative corridors (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7); and
  - (iii) discuss the relative costs of construction and use management of the alternative corridors.

#### **3. Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after stage two of consultation.

#### **4. Proposed Corridor**

Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.

- (a) Identify (number) and portray the proposed corridor and provide a description at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate information product in the draft and final plan;
- (b) rationale for proposed corridor; and
- (c) use management strategy;

**5. Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after stage three of consultation.

**6. Selected Corridor**

If the proposed corridor and use management strategy are selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected corridor and/or use management strategy is different from the proposed corridor and/or use management strategy, complete the applicable requirements of sections 4(a), (b) and (c) for the selected corridor and/or use management strategy.

**7. Changes to a Confirmed Primary Road Corridor Road Use Management Strategy****Use Management Strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7):**

Provide the rationale for the change in road use management strategy.

Complete this section prior to stage two of consultation.

**Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after stage two and three of consultation.

**Use Management Strategy**

If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management strategy.

## **Appendix III: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form**

This appendix is organized into three parts:

- A: Operational Prescription and Condition
- B: Primary Road Crossings
- C: Monitoring Program

Complete Part A, and if applicable Part E for each individual AOC or a group of areas of concern with common values for which an operational prescription or condition is prepared with consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions or conditions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.

Complete Part A, Part B, and if applicable Part C for each individual AOC which is crossed by a primary road, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.3

## **A: Operational Prescription and Conditions**

Complete Part A for each individual AOC, or a group of areas of concern with common values, for which an operational prescription or condition is prepared with consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.

### **1. Environmental Analysis of Alternative Operational Prescriptions and Conditions**

Complete this section for each alternative operational prescription prior to stage three of consultation.

- (a) alternative identifier/number;
- (b) description of proposed operational prescription and condition:  
(Specify dimensions of reserve, if applicable, and/or modifications to regular harvest, renewal and/or tending operations, if applicable.)
- (c) environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team, items (a) & (b)):

### **2. Proposed operational prescription and condition**

Complete this section for the proposed operational prescription and condition prior to stage three of consultation.

- (a) Description:
- (b) Rationale
- (c) Exception: (Specify if the operational prescription and condition is an exception, and identify applicable forest management guide, section and page reference.)

### **3. Summary of public comments**

Complete this section after stage three and four of consultation.

### **4. Selected prescription**

If the proposed operational prescription and condition is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected operational prescription and condition is different from the proposed operational prescription and condition, complete the requirements of sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected operational prescription and condition.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15

**B: Primary Road Crossing**

Complete Part B if public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an AOC by a new primary, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.

**ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER:**

**Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after stage three and four of consultation.



## **C: Monitoring Program**

Complete Part C if the operational prescription and condition for the individual AOC, or a group of AOCs with a common value, which was prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, is an exception to the specific direction or recommendation in a forest management guide, or if special requirements of a forest operations inspection(s) are prescribed. (NOTE: Do not complete Part C if the regular forest operations inspection program applies.)

### **1. Proposed Monitoring Program**

Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.

- (a) Description;
- (b) Methods to monitor effectiveness of exception prescription

### **2. Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after stage three and four of consultation.

### **3. Monitoring Program**

If the proposed monitoring program is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the monitoring program is different from the proposed monitoring program, complete the requirements of section 1 for the monitoring program.

## **Appendix IV: Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits**

The following operational standards apply to the extraction of aggregate resources for forestry aggregate pits:

1. Topsoil and overburden, where present, must be stripped and stored on site.
2. Aggregate material may be removed only within areas where access, harvest, or aggregate extraction has been planned and approved, with no removal occurring within 15 metres of the boundary of any planned area.
3. Aggregate material must not be removed from an area of concern or within 15 metres of the boundary of an area of concern, except:
  - (a) for a cultural heritage landscape or historic Aboriginal value, as defined in the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values, if,
    - (i) the operational prescriptions and conditions for the area of concern of the FMP documents conditions on location, construction or use of the forestry aggregate pit, as per the advice of a qualified individual as defined by the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values, and
    - (ii) the aggregate material is removed in accordance with such conditions; and
  - (b) for all other values, if,
    - (i) the operational prescriptions and conditions for the area of concern of the FMP documents conditions on location, construction or use of the forestry aggregate pit, and
    - (ii) the aggregate material is removed in accordance with such conditions.
4. Notwithstanding standard 3 above, aggregate material must not be removed from an area of concern or within 15 metres of the boundary of an area of concern for the following values, as defined in the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values:
  - (a) archaeology site;
  - (b) cemetery; or
  - (c) archaeological potential area.
5. When operating within 15 metres of a proposed roadside ditch, no excavation is to take place below the elevation of the planned depth of the proposed ditch; all excavations must be immediately sloped to no steeper than a 2:1 (horizontal: vertical) angle.
6. During extraction, no undercutting of the working face is permitted and:
  - (a) the working face must be sloped at the angle of repose; or

- 1           (b)     the vertical height of the working face must not be more than 1.5 metres  
2                 above the maximum reach of the equipment.  
3
- 4    7. All trees within 5 metres of the excavation face must be removed.  
5
- 6    8. The maximum pit area must not exceed 3 ha. When a pit or a portion of a pit is  
7         rehabilitated, it is no longer part of the pit.  
8
- 9    9. When the site is inactive, all pit faces must be sloped at the angle of repose.  
10
- 11   10. Within the excavation area, no ponding is allowed and offsite drainage must be designed  
12         to prevent sediment from entering any water feature.  
13
- 14   11. MNRF may direct that a forestry aggregate pit be rehabilitated where the responsibility  
15         for the road and associated forestry aggregate pit is being transferred back to MNRF.  
16
- 17   12. Final rehabilitation must include:  
18         (a)     sloping of all pit faces to normally a minimum of 3:1 (horizontal:vertical);  
19         (b)     re-spreading of any topsoil and overburden that was stripped from the site;  
20                 and  
21         (c)     mitigative measures, to the satisfaction of MNRF, to prevent erosion (e.g.,  
22                 establishment of vegetation).  
23
- 24   13. Existing or proposed forestry aggregate pits within areas of concern, or in the vicinity of  
25         features that are addressed by conditions on operations, as described in MNRF's forest  
26         management guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales,  
27         must not be constructed or operated except in circumstances as identified in the  
28         conditions on operations in the FMP. This includes any restrictions on the construction of  
29         new forestry aggregate pits and timing of aggregate extraction, rehabilitation, or other  
30         associated operations in existing pits.  
31
- 32   14. Progressive rehabilitation of the site must be ongoing starting from the commencement  
33         of the forestry aggregate pit.  
34
- 35   15. If a forestry aggregate pit has not been active for a period of five years and the  
36         sustainable forest licensee confirms that future use of the pit is not required, final  
37         rehabilitation must be completed in accordance with standard 12 above within 12  
38         months of the sustainable forest licensee's confirmation.  
39
- 40         Despite standard 15, if MNRF agrees that access to the pit that requires rehabilitation is  
41         not feasible within the 12-month period specified, MNRF and the sustainable forest  
42         licensee may agree, in writing, to a longer period.  
43

## 1 **Appendix V: Operational Standards for Wood Storage Yards**

2 The following operating standards apply to identified wood storage yards:

3 1. Wood shall not be stockpiled on the corner of a road.

4 2. Wood shall not be stockpiled within the travelled portion of a road corridor.

5 3. If forestry aggregate pits are to be used for storage, they must be confirmed to be a  
6 forestry pit, not one granted to another licence holder or permittee under the Aggregate  
7 Resources Act.

8 4. The wood shall not be stockpiled within 30 metres of a waterbody or watercourse.

9 5. After use, the wood storage yard must be revegetated to a condition of its former state to  
10 the extent reasonably possible;

11 6. Debris will be managed as per the slash management section of the FMP and debris (e.g.  
12 brush, slash, topsoil) shall not be deposited in ditches or on the shoulders of any road or  
13 below the high-water mark of any waterbody or watercourse;

14 7. Damage caused by the licence holder's use of existing roads, water crossings or ditches  
15 (for access to the wood storage yards) may be subject to repair and/or rehabilitation at the  
16 expense of the licence holder;

17 8. For identified values and important ecological features within or adjacent to existing or  
18 proposed wood storage yards, operational prescriptions and conditions as described in  
19 MNRF's forest management guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site  
20 scales, must be applied in accordance with the FMP.

21 This includes any restrictions on the construction of new wood storage yards, and the timing,  
22 use, revegetation or other associated operations in existing wood storage yards;

23 9. Conditions for wood movement and measurement for wood storage yards must be  
24 approved in writing by the Ministry's Regional Supervisor, Wood Measurement Section,  
25 prior to use. Failure to comply with any conditions set out in this written approval is  
26 considered a failure to comply with the conditions set out in the approved FMP. The start  
27 date and end date of the use of the wood storage yard must be supplied to the Ministry so  
28 that these dates are included in the written approval.

29

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS

The purpose of this glossary is to define and to explain terms, used in forestry or otherwise, which appear and are of importance in the text of the Forest Management Planning Manual. The definitions provided in this glossary have been taken fully, modified or adapted from an already existing source, as indicated. References for these entries are abbreviated as follows:

Aird	Aird, Paul L., "Conservation for the sustainable development of forests worldwide: A compendium of concepts and terms" <i>The Forestry Chronicle</i> . 70(6) (1994)
ARM	Access Roads Manual (August 1992)
CBS95	Canadian Biodiversity Strategy. Canada's Response to the Convention on Biological Diversity (1995)
CFSA	<i>Crown Forest Sustainability Act</i> (1994)
EAA	<i>The Environmental Assessment Act</i> (1975)
EA Decision	Environmental Assessment Board's <i>Reasons for Decision and Decision: Class Environmental Assessment by the Ministry of Natural Resources for Timber Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (EA-87-02)</i> (1994)
EALS	An Ecosystem Approach to Living Sustainably. A Perspective for the Ministry of Natural Resources (September, 1995)
ESA	<i>Endangered Species Act</i> (2007)
FIM	Forest Information Manual (2020)
FITC	Forest Inventory Terms in Canada. Canadian Forest Inventory Committee, Forestry Canada (1988)
FMPM (1996)	Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests (1996)
Forman	Forman, R. T. T. and M. Godron. <i>Landscape Ecology</i> . John Wiley and Sons, New York, N.Y. (1986)
FOSM	Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (2020)
FRWCI	Forest Roads and Water Crossings Initiative, Task Team Report (2003)

1		
2	Kimmins	Oct. 3, 1993, Module 2.
3		
4	MFM	Manual of Forest Management Plan Requirements for the Province of
5		Ontario (1977)
6		
7	MNR 1997	A Silvicultural Guide to Managing for Black Spruce, Jack Pine and
8		Aspen on Boreal Forest Ecosites in Ontario (1997)
9		
10	MNR 1998	A Silvicultural Guide for the Tolerant Hardwood Forest in Ontario
11		(1998)
12		
13	MNR 2010	Forest Management Guide for Conserving Biodiversity at the Stand
14		and Site Scales (2010)
15		
16	MNRF 2015	Forest Management Guide to Silviculture in the Great Lakes-St.
17		Lawrence and Boreal Forests of Ontario (2015)
18		
19	OG	Old Growth Policy for Ontario's Crown Forest (2003)
20		
21	PA	<i>The Pesticides Act</i> , Revised Statutes of Ontario, 1990, Chapter P.11.
22		Printed by the Queen's Printer for Ontario (1993)
23		
24	SFR	State of the Forest Report (2001)
25		
26	SM	Scaling Manual (2020)
27		
28	Smith et al. 1997	Smith, D. M., B. C. Larson, M. J. Kelty, and P. M. S. Ashton. 1997. The
29		practice of silviculture: applied forest ecology. John Wiley, New York,
30		New York, USA.
31		
32	STC	Silvicultural Terms in Canada. Science and Sustainable Development
33		Directorate, Forestry Canada, Ottawa. 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition (1995)
34		
35	URN	Items from Terminology of Forest Science: Technology Practice and
36		Products are listed by Universal Reference Number (1971)
37		
38		

**NOTE: Underlined words within definitions are also defined in the glossary.**

## **ACCESS**

The forest management operations of road construction, road maintenance, and the use management of roads to provide access to the forest for the harvest of the forest resource, transport of those resources to wood processing facilities, and forest management renewal and maintenance activities.

## **ACCESS CONTROL (roads)**

The closure of a road to public travel or the restricted access to a road for certain specified uses for given periods of time. (Modified ARM)

## **AGE CLASS**

One of the intervals into which the age range of forest stands is divided for classification and use. (Adapted URN 87)

## **AGGREGATE EXTRACTION AREA**

An individual polygon depicting a known site of aggregate within 500 meters of an existing forest access road that is outside: an approved area of operations; an operational road boundary; a primary road corridor; or a branch road corridor where a forestry aggregate pit is planned to be established.

## **ANALYSIS TOOL (FOREST)**

A computer-based tool used to model, project, simulate or forecast data and information. Forest analysis tools are used in the development and evaluation of the long-term management direction in a forest management plan.

## **ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE**

Information which identifies the type and extent of forest operations to be carried out during one year, consistent with the forest management plan. (Adapted URN 4417)

## **AREA CHARGES**

The charges to be paid in respect of the area under a Forest Resource Licence, as required by the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, the Regulations, and the licence.

## **AREA OF CONCERN (AOC)**

A geographic area established for an identified value that may be affected by forest management activities.

## **AREA OF OPERATIONS**

A geographic area comprised of individual, groups and/or portions of forest stands selected for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the ten-year period of a forest management plan.

**ARTIFICIAL REGENERATION**

Renewal of a forest, by seeding or planting seedlings or cuttings. (STC)

**BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY (syn: Biodiversity)**

The variety and variability among living organisms from all sources, including terrestrial, marine and aquatic ecosystems, and the ecological complexes of which they a part. (OG)

**Biodiversity:** includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems. (CBS95)

**BIOPRODUCT**

There are three categories of Bioproducts: bioenergy, biomaterials, and biochemicals. This list is not exhaustive and has been populated only to provide examples of the range of bioproducts that can be manufactured or produced from trees.

1. Bioenergy includes: liquid transportation (e.g. ethanol, biodiesel), solid biomass fuels (e.g. pellets, briquettes, chips) for the generation of heat and power, gaseous fuels (e.g. syngas) which can be used to generate heat and power, heat production, and electricity generation;
2. Biomaterials include: bioplastics (e.g. containers), and biocomposites (e.g. automotive parts) manufactured from tree fibres
3. Biochemicals include: bioindustrial chemicals, including basic and specialty chemicals and resins (e.g. paints, lubricants, solvents, dyes), biopharmaceuticals (e.g. antibodies, vaccines), and biocosmetics (e.g. makeup, soaps, body creams, lotions).

**CLEARCUT**

Noun.

1. An area harvested under the clearcut silvicultural system.
2. An area of forest land from which all (or most) merchantable trees have recently been harvested.

Verb. To harvest the merchantable trees in an area, normally in one operation. (Modified STC)

**CLEARCUT SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

A method of harvesting and regenerating an even-aged forest stand(s) in which new seedlings become established in fully exposed microenvironments after removal of all (or most) of the merchantable trees. Regeneration can originate naturally or artificially. Clearcutting may be done in blocks, strips, or patches. (Modified STC)



**CONIFER**

Trees and shrubs belonging to the order Coniferales, usually evergreen with cones and needle-shaped leaves.

**CONSERVATION**

Management of the human use of the biosphere so that it may yield the greatest sustainable benefit to present generations while maintaining its potential to meet the needs and aspirations of future generations, and includes the preservation, maintenance, sustainable utilization, restoration and enhancement of the environment. Modern conservation theory incorporates the notion that what is to be conserved is not so much the physical state of an ecological system as the ecological processes by which that state is created and maintained. (Aird)

**CONTINGENCY AREA**

Harvest areas identified and planned for, in the event that circumstances arise which cause selected harvest areas to be no longer available for operations. Contingency area will serve as replacement for selected harvest areas, and will only be used if needed.

**CONTINGENCY PLAN**

An interim forest management plan that is required when special circumstances affect the implementation of a forest management plan. An approved contingency plan permits the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the current approved forest management plan and the approval for implementation of the renewed forest management plan.

**CORRIDOR**

An area of uniform width bordering both or one side of a lineal feature such as a stream or route. (FITC)

**CRITERIA**

**Harvest:** A distinguishing set of characteristics that allows the identification of areas that are eligible for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the ten-year period of the forest management plan.

**Sustainability:** See Criterion

**CRITERION**

1. A criterion is characterized by a set of related indicators that are monitored periodically to assess change. (SFR 2001)
2. A category of conditions or processes by which sustainable forest management may be assessed. A criterion is characterized by a set of related indicators that are measured or assessed periodically to assess change.

3. A distinguishable characteristic of sustainable forest management; a value that must be considered in setting objectives and in assessing performance. (SFR 2001)

#### **CROWN FOREST**

A forest ecosystem or part of a forest ecosystem that is on land vested in Her Majesty in right of Ontario and under the management of the Minister of Natural Resources and Forestry. (CFSA)

#### **CROWN FOREST SUSTAINABILITY ACT**

An Act of the Ontario legislature to provide for the sustainability of Crown forests and, in accordance with that objective, to manage Crown forests to meet social, economic and environmental needs of present and future generations. (Modified CFSA)

#### **CROWN LAND**

Land vested in Her Majesty in right of Ontario.

#### **CUTTING CYCLE**

The planned interval between partial harvests in an uneven-aged stand. (STC)

#### **DECISION SUPPORT SYSTEM**

Information systems that utilize analysis tools (decision modules), databases and a decision maker's own insight in an interactive analytical modeling process to reach a specific decision.

#### **DECOMMISSIONING (roads)**

The physical work that will be undertaken to render the road impassable to vehicular traffic, enhance public safety and reduce potential environmental damage (e.g., removal of a water crossing(s), site preparation and regeneration).

#### **DESIRED FOREST AND BENEFITS**

The forest structure and composition and the goods and services, which are desired from the forest to achieve a balance of social, economic and environmental needs. The long-term management direction for the management unit is developed to achieve the desired forest and benefits.

#### **DESIRABLE LEVEL**

The measurable amount for an indicator, expressed as a specific number, a range or a trend, used in the assessment of sustainability.

**DISEASE**

Harmful deviation from normal functioning of physiological processes, generally abiotic or biotic in origin. (STC)

**ECOSITE**

An ecological landscape unit (ranging in resolution from thousands to hundreds of hectares) comprised of relatively uniform geology, parent materials, soils, topography and hydrology, occupied by a consistent complex of successional-related vegetation conditions.

**ECOSYSTEM**

The sum of the plants, animals, environmental influences and their interactions, within a particular habitat. (STC)

**ENVIRONMENT**

Has the same meaning as in the *Environmental Assessment Act*.

**EXCEPTION**

A silvicultural treatment in the silvicultural ground rules which differs from the recommendations in the applicable silvicultural guide, or an operational prescription or condition for an area of concern which differs from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guide.

**FIRST NATION COMMUNITY**

A First Nation community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with Part A, Section 3.1.1 of this manual.

**FISH HABITAT**

Spawning grounds and any other areas, including nursery, rearing, food supply and migration areas, on which fish depend directly or indirectly in order to carry out their life processes.

**FOREST**

1. (Ecology) A plant community predominantly of trees and other woody vegetation, growing more or less closely together (URN 2441);
2. (Silvicultural Management) An area managed for the production of timber and other forest products, or maintained under woody vegetation for such indirect benefits as protection of site or for recreation (URN 2442).
3. (Forest Diversity) An aggregate of forest stands.

**FOREST COVER**

All of the trees as described by the Forest Resources Inventory.

**FOREST DISTURBANCE**

A natural (e.g. fire) or anthropogenic (e.g. timber harvest) event in the forest that alters the natural succession of a forest stand or stands.

**FOREST DYNAMICS**

The natural processes involved in the development of a forest, and associated with growth and changes to its structure and composition through time.

**FOREST ECOSYSTEM**

An ecosystem in which trees are, or are capable of being, a major biological component. (CFSA)

**FOREST HEALTH**

The condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem's complexity while providing for the needs of the people of Ontario. (CFSA)

**FOREST MANAGEMENT**

Generally, the practical application of scientific, economic and social principles to the administration and working of a forest for specified management objectives; more particularly, that branch of forestry concerned with the overall administrative, economic, legal and social aspects, and with the essentially scientific and technical aspects, especially silviculture, protection and forest regulation. (Aird)

**FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

A document of that name prepared in accordance with the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994, for a management unit in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual. A forest management plan sets out the forest operations that may occur on a management unit by a holder of a forest resource licence while having regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values. (CFSA)

**Current Plan:** An approved forest management plan that is being implemented.

**Past Plan or Previous Plan:** The expired forest management plan for the plan period immediately preceding the current plan.

**FOREST OPERATIONS**

The harvesting of a forest resource, the use of a forest resource for a designated purpose, or the renewal or maintenance of a forest resource, and includes all related activities. (CFSA)

**FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTION**

A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal and maintenance activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to achieve the expected forest structure and condition.

**FOREST RENEWAL TRUST**

A Trust that provides for reimbursement of silvicultural expenses incurred after March 31, 1994 in respect of Crown forests in which forest resources have been harvested and for such other matters as may be specified by the Minister, on such terms and conditions as may be specified by the Minister. (CFSA, section 48)

**FOREST RESOURCE**

Trees in a forest ecosystem, and any other type of plant life prescribed by the regulations that is in a forest ecosystem, (CFSA, section 3)

**FOREST RESOURCES INVENTORY**

A composite information product which is assembled from a collection of individual geographic information coverages that contain descriptive information about the timber resource on each management unit (e.g., stand age, stand height, species composition, stocking level). The forest resources inventory for a management unit divides the area into a number of components, such as water, non-forested, non-productive forest and productive forest, and further classifies each component by ownership/land use categories. (Adapted FIM)

**FOREST STAND(S)**

An aggregation of trees occupying a specific area and uniform enough in composition (species), age and arrangement to be distinguishable from an adjacent aggregation of trees. (Modified MNR 1998)

**FOREST TYPE**

A general term to describe a group of forested areas or forest stands of similar composition. (Modified STC)

**FOREST UNIT**

A classification system that aggregates forest stands for management purposes that will normally have similar species composition, will develop in a similar manner (both naturally and in response to silvicultural treatments), and will be managed under the same silvicultural system.

**FORESTRY AGGREGATE PIT**

An aggregate pit which is exempt from the requirement for an aggregate permit under the *Aggregate Resources Act*, as the criteria set out in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this Forest Management Planning Manual are satisfied.

**FORESTRY FUTURES TRUST**

A Trust that provides for the following matters, on such terms and conditions as may be specified by the Minister:

1. The funding of silvicultural expenses in Crown forests where forest resources have been killed or damaged by fire or natural causes.
2. The funding of silvicultural expenses on land that is subject to a forest resource licence, if the licensee becomes insolvent.
3. The funding of intensive stand management and pest control in respect of forest resources in Crown forests.
4. Such other purposes as may be specified by the Minister.

(CFSa Section 51(3))

**GUIDE (forest management)**

A Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry forest management guide described in the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual* and any forest management guide that is adopted by reference in the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual*. Forest management guides provide direction for forest management practitioners that must be used in the development and implementation of forest management plans.  
(Modified EA Dec. Order)

**GUIDELINE**

A component of a guide that provides mandatory direction, but requires professional judgment for it to be applied appropriately at the local level. (MNR 2010)

**HABITAT**

An area on which the species depends, directly or indirectly, to carry on its life processes including life processes such as reproduction, rearing, hibernation, migration, or feeding and includes places in the area that are used by members of the species as dens, hibernacula or other residences; or if the species is one for which a habitat regulation has been made under the ESA, the area prescribed by that regulation as the habitat for the species. (ESA)

**HARDWOOD**

Trees that have broad leaves, in contrast to the needle-bearing conifers. Also, the wood produced by broad leaved trees, regardless of texture or density.

**HARVEST AREA**

**Available:** The area (in hectares) for each forest unit, as determined in the development of the long-term management direction, which serves as a limit for harvest area by forest unit, for the ten-year period of the forest management plan.

**Contingency:** see Contingency Area

**Eligible:** The areas, as determined by criteria consistent with the long-term management direction that could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year period.

**Optional:** The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are not preferred or selected harvest areas.

**Planned:** The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are selected for harvest during the ten-year period, up to the level of the available harvest area (with consideration for retained areas), by forest unit.

**Preferred:** The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are favoured for harvest during the ten-year period, up to the level of the available harvest area (with consideration for retained areas), by forest unit.

## HARVESTING

The removal of forest products for utilization, comprising cutting and sometimes initial processing and extraction. (Adapted URN 2944)

## HARVEST METHOD

A modification of one of the basic silvicultural systems which describes the harvest technique (e.g., *strip clearcut*, *group shelterwood*). (Modified FMPPM 1996)

## HARVEST VOLUME

**Available:** The estimated volume (in cubic metres) associated with the Available Harvest Area, as determined in the development of the long-term management direction.

**Planned:** The estimated volume (in cubic metres) associated with the Planned Harvest Area.

**Utilized:** The portion of the Planned Harvest Volume which is projected to be utilized to meet Industrial Wood Requirements.

**Unutilized:** The portion of the Planned Harvest Volume which is in excess of the Industrial Wood Requirements, which remains available for use by the forest industry.

## HERBICIDE

Any chemical preparation used to kill or inhibit the growth of forbs, grasses, woody plants, and their seeds. (STC)

**IMPORTANT ECOLOGICAL FEATURE**

A subset of natural resource attributes that are normally common and widespread, are often transitory, are rarely identified in advance of operations, and typically require minimal modifications to regular operations (e.g., Conditions on Regular Operations) to ensure they are maintained or protected. Important Ecological Features include, for example, wildlife trees, grouse nests, and ephemeral flows, seeps, and swales. Important Ecological Features may also include a species at risk or its habitat.

**INDEPENDENT FOREST AUDIT**

An independently led review, in accordance with O. Reg. 160/04 under the CFSA, of the adequacy of forest management practices, controls and processes to ensure that the management organization continues to be in control and in compliance with relevant legislation, policies and directives.

**INDICATOR**

A systematically measured and assessed quantitative or qualitative variable, which when observed periodically, demonstrates trends. Indicators are identified in each forest management plan to assess the effectiveness of forest management activities in achieving management objectives, and to assess the sustainability of the forest.

**INDUSTRIAL WOOD REQUIREMENTS**

Wood supplies from the management unit required to support the operation of existing and proposed wood processing mills. Industrial wood requirements are determined considering Crown wood supply commitments and offers, forecast operating levels of existing and planned mills, current and historic mill utilization, and business arrangements.

**INSECTICIDE**

Any chemical or biological preparation used to kill or disrupt the development of insects. (STC)

**LANDSCAPE**

A heterogeneous land area composed of a cluster of interacting ecosystems that is repeated in similar form throughout. (Forman)

A landscape is normally defined by geomorphology or climate.

**LICENSEE**

A person or company to whom a Forest Resource Licence has been granted. (SM)

**LOCAL CITIZENS' COMMITTEE**

An advisory committee of local citizens established under section 13 of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994.



**LOGGING METHOD**

A term which indicates the process used to move wood products from stump to roadside during a harvesting operation (e.g., full tree, tree length, shortwood).

**LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**

The management objectives, indicators, assessment of sustainability, social and economic assessment, and levels of activities required to achieve the desired forest and benefits and provide for the sustainability of the forest for the management unit.

**MAINTENANCE (forestry)**

The forest management activities of tending and protection, which are carried out to ensure the survival and development of a forest to maturity.

**MAINTENANCE (roads)**

**Routine:** Those activities necessary to maintain or upgrade a road and right of way for the traffic using it. Routine maintenance may include minor road re-alignment within the right of way.

**Emergency:** Road maintenance that requires immediate attention to restore access and reduce the chance of personal injury, damage to equipment, inconvenience to road users and further road damage (e.g., major washouts, blocked culverts, damaged bridges, etc.). (ARM)

**MANAGED FOREST**

Crown forest for which there is no legal or land use planning decision which prevents the land from being managed for forest management purposes.

**MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVE**

A statement of quantitative or qualitative desired future benefits or conditions, developed specifically for the management unit, that are to be achieved through the manipulation of forest cover.

**MANAGEMENT UNIT**

An area of Crown forest designated under section 7 of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994.

**MERCHANTABLE**

Timber or a tree that is merchantable as defined in the Scaling Manual.

**MÉTIS COMMUNITY**

A Métis community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with section 3.1.1 of this manual.

**MNRF**

MNRF means the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry, or the ministry of the Minister that has been assigned to undertake responsibility for the Crown Forest Sustainability Act.

**MODIFIED OPERATIONS**

Harvest, renewal and tending operations, where prescriptions have been developed to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values. Modified operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), or unique prescriptions to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values.

**MONITORING**

The collection and analysis of data over extended periods of time. It provides information on past and present ecological, social, cultural, and economic trends, and a basis for predictions about future conditions. (EALS)

**NATURAL REGENERATION**

Renewal of a forest, by natural seeding, sprouting, suckering or layering. (STC)

**NATURAL RESOURCE**

A renewable (forest, water, wildlife, soil, etc.) or non-renewable (oil, coal, iron, etc.) resource that is a natural asset. (Aird)

**OLD GROWTH**

A functional condition (e.g. stand productivity, nutrient cycling, and wildlife habitat) of a forest ecosystem, in a dynamic state, that embodies a set of physical features and characteristics that typically include:

1. a complex forest stand structure (e.g. old trees for the ecosite, large tree size and wide spacing, multiple canopy layers and gaps, and rates of change in species composition);
2. large dead standing trees (snags), accumulations of downed woody material, up-turned stumps, root and soil mounds, and accelerating tree mortality.

**OPERATIONAL PRESCRIPTION FOR AREAS OF CONCERN**

An operational prescription for areas of concern is a prescription prepared for harvest, renewal and tending and protection activities to prevent, minimize or mitigate adverse effects of forest management operations on a natural resource feature, land use or value.

**OPERATIONAL ROAD BOUNDARY**

An operational road boundary includes the planned area of operations, and the area from an existing road or planned road corridor to the planned area of operations within which an operational road is planned to be constructed. Operational road

boundaries are intended to identify where operational roads may be constructed and should provide flexibility in operational road location where necessary (e.g., terrain limitations).

#### **OWNERSHIP (land)**

Classification of the provincial land base into the categories of Crown, patent and other vested interest.

#### **PATENTED LAND**

Land transferred from Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Ontario to an individual, company or corporation in perpetuity.

#### **PESTICIDE**

Any organism, substance or thing that is manufactured, represented, or sold or used as a means of directly or indirectly controlling, preventing, destroying, mitigating, attracting, or repelling any pest or of altering the growth, development or characteristics of any plant life that is not a pest and includes any organism, substance or thing registered under the *Pest Control Products Act* (Canada). (PA)

#### **PLAN AMENDMENT**

Any change to a forest management plan or a contingency plan which is normally consistent with the long term management direction for the management unit. If there is a change to legislation and/or associated regulations a Regional Director of Regional Operations Division, Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry, may request an amendment to a forest management plan or contingency plan that is not consistent with the long-term management direction. Amendments could range from simple corrections to the text of an approved forest management plan to changes requiring comprehensive planning, public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.

#### **PLAN AUTHOR**

The registered professional forester licenced to practice professional forestry, under the *Professional Foresters Act*, 2000, who is responsible for the preparation and certification of a forest management plan. Where the original plan author of the forest management plan no longer has that responsibility, his/her successor is deemed to be the plan author.

#### **PLAN PERIOD**

The ten-year timeframe of a forest management plan for which long-term management direction is established, and forest sustainability is determined.

#### **PLAN RENEWAL**

The time in the planning cycle marked by the approval of a forest management plan. Forest management plans are normally renewed every ten years.

**1  
2 PRESCRIBED BURN**

3 The knowledgeable application of fire to a specific land area to accomplish  
4 predetermined forest management or other land use objectives. (STC)  
5

**6 PRODUCTION FOREST**

7 Productive forest land, at various stages of growth, with no obvious physical  
8 limitations on the ability to practice forest management. (Modified EA Decision)  
9

**10 PRODUCTIVE FOREST**

11 All forest areas which are capable of growing commercial trees, irrespective of  
12 planning decisions, and which is further sub-divided into “protection forest” and  
13 “production forest”. (Modified EA Decision)  
14

**15 PRODUCTIVITY**

16 A change in biomass (volume) per unit area and time (yield, increment). (Kimmins)  
17

**18 PROVINCIAL FOREST TYPE**

19 An aggregation of forest types used to describe forest cover at broad planning levels.  
20 Provincial forest types are defined in the *Forest Resource Assessment Policy*.  
21

**22 PROTECTION**

23 Forest management operations which are carried out to prevent, control or manage  
24 the spread of, and/or the damage caused by insects and diseases. Protection may  
25 involve the use of insecticides or manual treatments.  
26

**27 PROTECTION FOREST**

28 Productive forest land on which forest management activities cannot normally be  
29 practised without incurring deleterious environmental effects because of obvious  
30 physical limitations such as steep slopes and shallow soils over bedrock. (Modified EA  
31 Decision)  
32

**33 REGENERATION**

34 The renewal of a forest, by natural or artificial means. This term may also be used to  
35 describe the young forest itself. (Adapted URN 4843, 4844, 4846, 4848)  
36

37 Also see Artificial and Natural Regeneration  
38

**39 REGENERATION STANDARD**

40 The required level of observable measures of a regenerating area to provide  
41 confidence that the target (i.e., mature) stand condition can be achieved.  
42

**REGION or REGIONAL**

In this manual an administrative geographical unit of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry.

**REGISTERED PROFESSIONAL FORESTER (R.P.F.)**

A person licensed to practice professional forestry in Ontario, under the *Professional Foresters Act, 2000*

**REGULAR OPERATIONS**

Harvest, renewal and tending operations conducted in accordance with the silvicultural ground rules.

**RENEWAL**

The silvicultural operations undertaken to stimulate and promote the establishment and growth of desired future forest stands, which may include the activities of site preparation and regeneration.

**RESERVE**

An operational prescription for an area of concern where operations are prohibited.

**RESOURCE STEWARDSHIP AGREEMENT**

An agreement negotiated between a resource-based tourism operation as determined by the Ministry of Tourism, Culture and Sport, and a sustainable forest licensee.

**RESPONSIBILITY ASSIGNMENT (roads)**

The party assigned responsibility for a road (and associated water crossings) (i.e., MNRF, sustainable forest licensee, other user).

**RE-TREATMENT**

A specific renewal treatment (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that has been applied and usually occurs after a preliminary assessment has determined that further treatment is necessary.

**ROAD**

**Primary:** A road that provides principal access for the management unit, and is constructed, maintained and used as part of the main road system on the management unit. Primary roads are normally permanent roads.

**Branch:** A road, other than a primary road, that branches off an existing or new primary or branch road, providing access to, through or between areas of operations on a management unit.

**Operational:** A road within an operational road boundary, other than a primary or branch road, that provides short-term access for harvest, renewal and tending operations. Operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are often site prepared and regenerated.

## **ROAD NETWORK**

A system of new or existing roads that provide access to a distinct geographic area. (Adapted FRWCI)

## **SALVAGE HARVEST**

The harvesting of timber that has been killed or damaged by natural causes, such as fire, wind, flood, insects and disease. (Modified FOSM)

## **SARO LIST**

The Species at Risk in Ontario list set out in O. Reg. 230/08 made under the ESA.

## **SCARIFICATION**

Mechanical loosening of the topsoil of open areas, or breaking up the forest floor, in preparation for regeneration by natural seeding. (Adapted URN 5134)

## **SEEDING**

A form of artificial regeneration which involves the scattering of seed, more or less evenly, over an area.

## **SEED ORCHARD**

A relatively small area, established with superior stock derived from selected parent material, and intensively managed to provide a sustained supply of genetically improved seed for use in an artificial regeneration program.

## **SELECTION SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

An uneven-aged silvicultural system which involves periodic partial harvests, controlled by basal area, using vigour and risk characteristics to determine individual tree selection. (MNR 1998)

## **SHELTERWOOD SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

An even-aged silvicultural system where mature trees are harvested in a series of two or more cuts (preparatory, regeneration, removal) for the purpose of establishing regeneration under shelter of the residual trees, whether by cutting uniformly over the entire stand area or in narrow strips. Regeneration is natural or artificial. Regeneration interval determines the degree of even-aged uniformity. (Adapted MFM)

Also see Silvicultural System

**SILVICULTURAL GROUND RULES**

Specifications, standards, and other instructions, that direct silvicultural activities on a management unit during the period of the forest management plan.

**SILVICULTURAL STRATUM**

An aggregation of forest stands for forest management purposes that are in the same forest unit and have the same estimated growth and yield.

**SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

A planned program of silviculture treatments that extends throughout the life of a stand for the purposes of controlling stand establishment, composition, and growth (Smith et al 1997) (MNRF 2015).

**SILVICULTURAL TREATMENT**

The method of harvest, renewal or tending, as identified in the silvicultural ground rules, through which a forest operations prescription will be met.

**SILVICULTURAL TREATMENT PACKAGE**

A grouping of acceptable silvicultural treatments for the appropriate forest unit and ecosite combination which can be undertaken over time to achieve the desired future forest and benefits. (Modified MNR 1997)

**SILVICULTURE**

Generally, the science and art of cultivating forest crops, based on a knowledge of silvics (URN 5384). More particularly, the theory and practice of controlling the establishment composition, constitution, and growth of forests (URN 5385).

**SITE PREPARATION**

Disturbance of the forest floor, topsoil, and/or competing vegetation, by mechanical or chemical means, or by prescribed burning, to create suitable conditions for natural or artificial regeneration. (Modified MFM)

**SPATIAL**

Dependent on, or associated with, a specific geographic location.

Normally refers to information stored in a form or format that is directly usable by geographic information systems.

**SPECIES**

A singular or plural term for a population, or series of populations, of organisms that are capable of interbreeding freely with each other but not with members of other species. (Aird)

**SPECIES AT RISK**

Any species, which is listed on the SARO List.

**STAGE OF MANAGEMENT**

One in a series of harvest cuts performed over the life of a forest stand. The type and number of harvest cuts depends on the silvicultural system used.

**STANDARD**

A component of a guide that provides mandatory direction. (MNR 2010)

**STAND IMPROVEMENT**

The removal of trees to improve the composition and quality of a forest stand, generally used in the selection silvicultural system.

**SILVICULTURAL OPTIONS**

Broad groupings of silvicultural treatments that apply to the same initial forest conditions, achieve the same future forest conditions, require similar silvicultural expenditures and use the same growth projections and/or yield curves. Silvicultural options are used to represent silvicultural treatments during strategic analysis.

**SUCCESSION**

Changes in species composition in an ecosystem over time, often in a predictable order. (Aird)

**SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT**

Regeneration treatments (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that are applied when initial regeneration efforts are not expected to meet the regeneration standards.

**SUPPLEMENTARY DOCUMENTATION**

The part of the forest management plan that contains the information that supports the decisions in the plan and summarizes the information used in the preparation of the plan. The format for the supplementary documentation includes text, tables and maps.

**SUSTAINABILITY**

Long term Crown forest health. (CFSA)

**SUSTAINABLE FOREST LICENCE**

A licence granted under Part III, section 26 of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994.

**SUSTAINABLE FOREST MANAGEMENT**

The management of forest ecosystems to maintain a healthy forest ecosystem which



provides a continuous, predictable flow of benefits. Indicators of forest sustainability criteria are incorporated into strategic decision-making and into the periodic assessments of both forest and socioeconomic conditions. Forest operations are conducted in a manner that conserves forest health and minimizes undesirable effects on the physical and social environments.

#### **TENDING**

Forest operations which are carried out to improve the growth or quality of a forest. Tending may involve cleaning (i.e., the removal of undesirable or competing vegetation through the use of herbicides or manual treatments), thinning, stand improvement or pruning.

#### **THINNING**

Thinning is a form of partial canopy removal in an established stand that concentrates potential wood production of a stand on selected trees (Smith et al 1997). Secondary objectives may include compositional objectives or developing future seed producing crowns. Thinning may be used to influence wood quality and quantity and achieve specific management objectives (habitat, aesthetics, watershed management, etc).

**Commercial Thinning:** A thinning in which the harvested trees are removed from the site and used for commercial purposes.

**Pre-Commercial Thinning:** A thinning that does not yield trees of commercial value, and is usually designed to improve crop spacing. (Modified STC) In Ontario, the term pre-commercial thinning is generally used in relation to even-aged management only. Pre-commercial thinning in uneven-aged management is referred to as "improvement cutting" or stand improvement.

#### **TIMBER**

A wood material yielded by trees.

#### **TREE IMPROVEMENT**

The control of parentage, combined with specific silvicultural treatments (e.g., tending) to improve the overall yield and quality of timber from forest stands.

#### **UNDERSIZE AND DEFECT**

Timber or a tree that is not merchantable, including undersize material and defects, as defined in the Scaling Manual.

**USE MANAGEMENT STRATEGY (road)**

An approach outlining the purpose and description, and defining the roles and responsibilities related to use, maintenance, use control, decommissioning and monitoring of roads on Crown land.

**VALUE**

A term used to describe known natural, cultural or First Nation or Métis resource attribute or use of land, including all lakes and streams, which must be considered in forest management planning. (EA Dec Order)

**VOLUME**

The amount of wood in a tree, forest stand, or other specified area, recorded by a unit of measure.

**WETLAND**

Land that is seasonally or permanently covered by shallow water, as well as land where the water table is close to or at the surface. In either case, the presence of abundant water has caused the formation of hydric soils and has favoured the dominance of either hydrophytic or water-tolerant plants. The four major types of wetlands are swamps, marshes, bogs and fens. (*Wetlands Policy*)

**WILDLIFE**

Normally includes all wild mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians.

**WOOD STORAGE YARD**

There are two types of wood storage yards: temporary holding yards and merchandizing yards.

Temporary holding yards for forest resources are storage sites which are removed from the harvesting location, i.e. outside of the harvest approval area. These yards are generally used annually for the short-term storage of forest resources prior to movement to the final processing destination. Wood from more than one license and/or Harvest Approval area may be stored at these sites.

Merchandizing yards are sites which are also removed from the harvesting location. These yards may be temporary or long-term and are used for slashing, sorting, log improvement and wood measurement activities, as applicable, that occur prior to delivery to the final processing destinations. Forest resources from more than one license and/or Harvest Approval area may be processed at these sites.

Wood storage sites do not include piling of timber at roadside adjacent to active forest operations.

1 **YIELD**

2 The actual or estimated amount of product from a tree or a forest stand, or other  
3 specified area.

4